



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

6th

PRIMARY SIX
SECOND TERM

2024

الصف السادس الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دار غـزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

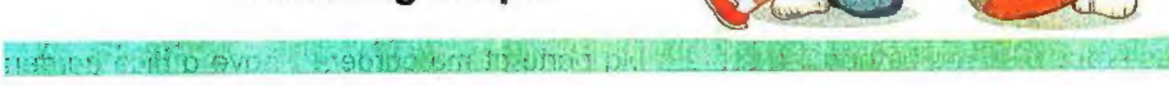


Contents









Writing Skills



How to write a paragraph
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٥٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شىء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف مكان - زمان / صفة / حال
Amged	Garden	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	He is excited.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Gamal is a doctor.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	She went to the party.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are ready on Sunday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help her.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	We get up at 7 o'clock.

1 **Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Your birthday party

Guiding questions
1- When's your birthday?
2- Where's your birthday?

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



How to write an email
كيف تكتب إيميل

To:	البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه:
From:	البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالراسل:
Subject:	موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية كإننا بنكتب براجراف عادى ---------------------------

----

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكترونى بشكل منظم:

١- فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."

"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبته:

I want to tell you about ---

٥- يجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإلكترونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل: ".Write soon" أو ".See you soon"

أو ".By for you now" أو ".Hope to hear from you soon"

لاحظ بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

١- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة him أو her أو them قم بتحويلها فى الإيميل إلى كلمة you.

٢- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة your نحولها إلى كلمة my.

٣- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة you نحولها إلى كلمة I.

• يأتى السؤال كالتالى:

Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

beaches - amazing

To your friend Hany to tell him about your trip to Alexandria. Your name is Emad and your email address is emad17@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hany33@gmail.com.

New Message

To	(1) ... ايميل المرسل اليه	Cc Bcc
From	(2) ... ايميل الراسل	
Subject	(3) ... موضوع الرسالة	

(4) **Dear / Hi** اسم المرسل اليه **(Hany),**

جملة افتتاحية (5) → ---------------------------------------

موضوع الايميل (6) → ---------------------------------------

جملة ختامية (7) → ---------------------------------------

تحية الخاتمة (8) **Yours / Love**
اسم الراسل **(Emad)**

Send

لاحظ

إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الاليكترونى الخاص بك وبصديقك
اكتب إسم صديقك فى :To واسمك فى :From



How to write a blog
كيف تكتب تدوينة

1 **Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:**



BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

١- تاريخ اليوم

Tuesday, 5th August

٢- عنوان الموضوع

My new school

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية

Dear Diary,
It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment.
My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school. 🙂

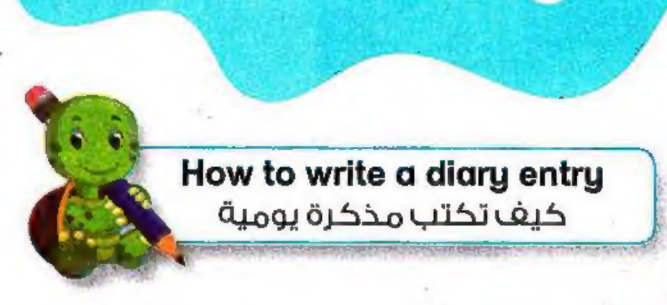
٤- رموز تعبيرية

٥- الصور



- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذى سنتحدث عنه.
٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التى مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" أو "my".
٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
٨- أعط رأيك فى الموضوع الذى نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:
"I think that ...." أو "In my opinion..............."



- خطوات كتابة المذكرة اليومية

- A diary has features that are different from other types of text:

- تحتوي المذكرة اليومية على سمات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص:

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

- إنها عادة تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل واحدة تدور حول ما حدث في يوم واحد.

- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).

- تكتب عادةً بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر الشخص الأول (المتكلم) (أنا ، نحن ، ملكي ، إلخ).

- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

- تصف عادةً أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.

- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

- تصف عادةً الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

مثال لمذكرة يومية:

Dear Diary,

Today while I was cleaning my cupboard, I found some old pictures of me and my sisters. We were laughing a lot in this picture. I believe that it should be some really funny moment. Another funny picture, when I was hiding and eating chocolate from my father's pocket so that I don't have to share with anyone.

A picture of us was also there. It was on my sister's birthday. Some pictures made me laugh and some made me cry.

Gameela

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.................
- The passage is mainly about...................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.
- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطي تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- واهم شئ يخصه انه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف السادس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

Marks: 30 | Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **(6 Marks)**

A text about **SIXTY (60)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark and a half each)**

B- Reading (13 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **(4 Marks)**

Learners are given **FOUR (4)** MCQs vocabulary items based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **(4 Marks)**

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE** (5) words given. The first sentence should be written in full. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: **(5 Marks)**

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINTY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. THREE (3) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)

B: **TWO (2) open ended** questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(One mark each)



C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3 Marks)

THREE (3) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

(One mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence **or** question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each are provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **FIFTY (50)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph - Email - Blog - Text message - Diary

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)



Unit 7

Amazing artifacts

قطع أثرية مذهلة







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن القطع الأثرية في متحف التاريخ القديم.

2. Listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحث ويكتب عن القطع الأثرية القديمة المهمة.

3. Listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.

- يستمع الطالب إلى عرض تقديمى عن المعادن في مصر القديمة.

4. Use the past simple. - يستخدم الطالب زمن الماضي البسيط.

5. Do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian Artifacts.

- يقوم الطالب بحل اختبار قصير عن الآثار المصرية القديمة.

6. Read about animals in Ancient Egypt.

- يقرأ الطالب عن الحيوانات في مصر القديمة.

7. Use prepositions of place. - يستخدم الطالب حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

8. Say words with the sound /er/ - يقول الطالب كلمات بها الصوت /er/

9. Write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.

- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق عن معدن أو مادة خام في مصر القديمة.

10. Research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

- يجرى الطالب بحث ويكتب ألواح عرض للآثار من مصر القديمة.







Lesson 1 A Visit to the Museum





استمع إلى المفردات:







clay صلصال | glass زجاج | gold ذهب







granite حجر جرانيت | paper ورق | papyrus ورق البردى

artifacts	قطع أثرية
preserve	يحفظ
durable	صلب / قوى التحمل
fascinating	مبهر / خلاب



Other words كلمات أخرى

guide	مرشد سياحى
excited	متحمس
student	طالب
Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين
condition	ظروف
Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون
reason	سبب
certain	معين / محدد
climate	مناخ
weather	طقس
material	مادة خام
valuable	قيم / ثمين
pots	أوانى



Adjectives صفات

close to	بالقرب من
hot	ساخن
cold	بارد
interesting	مثير للاهتمام
dry	جاف
wet	رطب

Unit 7

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
damage	يتلف/ يدمر	damaged
help	يساعد	helped
preserve	يحفظ/ يصون	preserved
cover	يغطي	covered
last	يدوم	lasted

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
know	يعرف	knew
can	يستطيع	could
hear	يسمع	heard
keep	يحافظ	kept

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



welcome to	مرحبا في	happy about	سعيد بشأن
first of all	أولا / قبل أى شئ	last a long time	يستغرق وقت طويل
last forever	تدوم للأبد	that's why	لذلك

Study the following

1. I am your guide today. – أنا المرشد الخاص بكم اليوم.
2. We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
   – نحن متحمسون للتعلم عن القطع الاثرية المصرية القديمة.
3. What would you like to know? – ماذا تود ان تعرف؟
4. Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?
   – حسناء، قبل أى شئ، لماذا لدينا آثار كثيرة جدا؟
5. That's an interesting question. – هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام .
6. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt. – نحن لدينا مناخ حار وجاف في مصر.
7. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. – عرف المصريون القدماء أن هذه المواد الخام يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة.
8. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite.
   – لذلك بنى المصريون القدماء الاهرامات بحجر الجرانيت.
9. What other materials did they use? – ما هى المواد الخام الأخرى التي استخدموها؟
10. They used a lot of glass which last forever.
    – استخدم المصريون القدماء كثيرًا من الزجاج والذى يدوم للأبد.



11 I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb.

– سمعت أيضا أن المصريون القدماء استخدموا كثيرا من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

12 The Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable.

– أحب المصريون القدماء استخدام الذهب لأنه معدن قيم جدًا.

13 It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

– إنه من الرائع أن تستمتع بالأشياء التي صنعها المصريون القدماء.

1 Listen and read. Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا تامر وتمارا في المتحف؟



استمع إلى النص،

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

Arabic Meaning

١- قطع أثرية
٢- مناخ
٣- يحفظ
٤- جرانيت
٥- صلب / قوى التحمل
٦- مبهر
٧- زجاج
٨- ذهب

Mr Tarek: Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History.
My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

Tamer: Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

Tamara: We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts(1).

Mr Tarek: Great! What would you like to know?

Tamara: Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?

Mr Tarek: That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate(2). We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve(3) them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite(4), a very hard and durable (5) stone.

Tamer: That's fascinating(6)! What other materials did they use?

Mr Tarek: They used a lot of glass(7), which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

Tamer: I also heard they used a lot of gold(8) in Tutankhamun's tomb.

Mr Tarek: Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

Tamer: I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

الأثر هو شئ صنعه البشر فى الماضى. تعتبر مركب خوفو الشمسية أثر من آثار مصر القديمة. هى أقدم سفينة محفوظة سليمة فى العالم.

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Tamer went on a trip to the ....

   a Cairo Tower   b Pyramids
   c Egyptian Museum   d station

2. The museum has a lot of ....

   a pens   b artifacts   c paper   d glass

3. The artifacts were made of ....

   a glass   b granite   c clay   d paper

4. The Ancient Egyptians were so ....

   a bad   b tall   c clever   d small

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. This stone is very hard, it is ....

   a soft   b durable   c happy   d hot

2. Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is ....

   a hard   b valuable   c dry   d cold

3. I visited the museum and I saw many .... there.

   a facts   b artifacts   c schools   d rivers

4. They Pyramids are beautiful and ....

   a modern   b fascinating   c new   d wet

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptians were great people. They made a lot of artifacts. They tried to preserve them. They used different materials to make these artifacts. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone. They also used glass to make a lot of artifacts. Ancient Egyptians also used a lot of paper. They made paper from papyrus. They also used clay which was found close to the River Nile to make pots. Ancient Egyptians used gold in many artifacts. Gold is a valuable metal.



A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....
   a) Ancient artifacts　　b) weather
   c) paper　　d) gold
2. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with ....
   a) gold　　b) granite　　c) paper　　d) clay
3. Ancient Egyptians made paper from ....
   a) clay　　b) papyrus　　c) stone　　d) gold

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Where did they find clay? ....
5. Why did the Ancient Egyptians use gold in artifacts? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً

1. do - have - Why - we - many - so - artifacts? ....
2. a hot, dry - We - climate- in -have -Egypt. ....
3. Egyptians - The Ancient - to - liked - gold - use. ....

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what other materials did they use ....
2. We re excited to learn ....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

Ancient Egyptian artifacts

Guiding fact file

objects	Pyramids and artifacts
material	granite, gold

....

....

....

Lesson

2 They loved animals



Key vocabulary







baboon قرد البابون





crocodile تمساح



falcon صقر



hippo فرس النهر





ibis طائر أبو منجل



monkey قرد





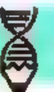
ثعبان



rat(s) فأر كبير (فئران)



mouse (mice) فأر (فئران)



particularly	خاصة	university	جامعة
almost	تقريبًا	safe	آمن
turtle	سلحفاة	especially	خاصة
knowledge	معرفة	afterlife	الحياة الآخرة
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	tombs	مقابر
therefore	اذاً	thousands	آلاف
pests	آفات	decision	قرار
pet	حيوان اليف	whole time	طوال الوقت
of course	بالتاكيد	hiking	التجول على الأقدام
trick	خدعة	a boat ride	رحلة بالقارب



Adjectives صفات

free	خالي من / حُر	popular / common	شائع / منتشر
dangerous	خطير	important	مهم
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل

Definitions

grain	حبوب/غلة	seeds from plants used to make flour and bread
adored	عشق	loved something very much
wisdom	حكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions
mummify	يحنط	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time
statue	تمثال	an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
adore	يعشق	adored
mummify	يحنط	mummified
love	يحب	loved
believe	يعتقد	believed
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
represent	يمثل / يرُمز	represented
include	يشمل	included
produce	ينتج	produced
drop	يسقط	dropped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
keep	يُربي	kept
find	يجد	found
am / is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
eat	يأكل	ate
feed	يطعم	fed
become	يصبح	became
teach	يعلم	taught
grow up	يكبر	grew up

Study the following

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.

- أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات وقاموا بتربية الكثير منهم كحيوانات أليفة.

2. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house.

- عشق المصريون القدماء القطط. حيث كان هناك تقريبًا قطة فى كل منزل.

3. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe.

- اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن القطط تعتنى بهم وتحافظ عليهم فى أمان.

4. Cats were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.

- كانت القطط حيوانات اليفة جيدة لأنها تنظف نفسها وتحافظ على البيوت خالية من الآفات مثل الفئران والثعابين.

5. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grains.

- كان ذلك مهم جدًا خاصةً للفلاحين الذين يزرعون الحبوب..

6. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats.

- لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط تأكل الفئران.

7. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos and lions which were dangerous and difficult to look after.

- ربى بعض الناس الحيوانات التى من الصعب رعايتها مثل التماسيح، وحيوانات فرس النهر والأسود.

8. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom.

- أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور خاصة الصقر وطائر أبو منجل حيث كان رمزًا للحكمة.

9. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone.

- يوجد الآلاف من المومياوات الخاصة بطائر أبو منجل فى سقارة فقط.

10. They were also important in the afterlife.

- كان مهمين أيضًا للحياة الآخرة (الحياة بعد الموت).

11. Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt.

- مازالت القطط منتشرة كحيوان آليف فى مصر.

Language قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense (زمن الماضي البسيط)



◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved animals.



Subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولاً : الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied :

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط :

- love → love(d) dance → dance(d)

- إذا لم ينتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه ed :

- need → need(ed) look → look(ed)

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y يسبقه حرف ساكن نقوم بحذف حرف الـ y ونضيف ied :

- study → stud(ied) try → tr(ied)

- بعض الافعال نضاعف بها الحرف الاخير عند اضافة ed :

- drop → drop(ped) stop → stop(ped)

ثانياً : الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

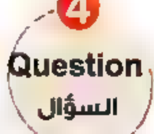
- keep → kept become → became



Subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

Subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- Mice didn't eat grains.
- I never loved math when I was young.





- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.
- When did you travel to London? - I traveled two years ago.





5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	last (week / month / year)	ago
in the past	in + year (in 2010)	

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Verb to be in the past فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt..

لا تستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were).

- Shady and Martin didn't be at school yesterday. (x)
- Shady and Martin weren't at school yesterday. (√)
- Did Adam be with his father? (x)
- Was Adam with his father? (√)

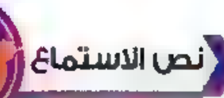
Check up Exercises

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hani didn't ------------- (went) to school.
2. Amr ------------ (didn't) happy yesterday.
3. -------- (Do) you play football last week?
4. Ancient Egyptians ------------ (look after) their pets.
5. Which ----------- (did) their favorite animals?
6. I ---------- (grow up) in a village in the past.
7. ---------- (Was) there a lot of birds.
8. They ----------- (clean) the room yesterday.
9. ------------ (was) there pens on the chair? B: Yes, there were.
10. They ------------ (didn't) happy last week.


استمع إلى النص:

1

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly[1] adored[2] cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed[3] that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests[4] like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain[5]. The mice[6] didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

Arabic Meaning

١- خاصة
٢- عشقوا
٣- اعتقدوا
٤- آفات
٥- حبوب/غلة
٦- فئران
٧- قرود البابون
٨- حكمة
٩- محنط
١٠- تماثيل

2

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons[7]. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

3

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom[8]. There are thousands of mummified[9] ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues[10] of animals in the tombs.

4

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form:

اكمل الجمل بصيغة الماضي البسيط:

1. The Ancient Egyptians ---loved--- (love) their pets.
2. They ------------- (teach) their monkeys different tricks.
3. The crocodiles quickly -------------- (become) dangerous pets.
4. The ibis ---------- (represent) wisdom.



2 **Write a question for each sentence:** اكتب سؤال لكل جملة:

1. I grew up in Cairo.

Where did you grow up?

2. I was a student at the local school.

---

3. At university, I studied math.

---

4. After university, I became a teacher.

---

3 **Complete the conversation with the past simple. Then listen and check:**

اكمل المحادثة بزمن الماضي البسيط:

Mayar : Hi Nesma! (1) Did ---- you have a nice weekend?

Nesma : Hi Mayar! Yes, I (2) ---------- I went to Al-Azhar Park with my family.

Mayar : What (3) ---------------------------- you do there?

Nesma : We (4) ---------------- a picnic. Then we went on a boat ride.

It (5) ---------------------------------- great!

Mayar : (6) ------------------------------------ you go hiking?

Nesma : No, we didn't. We wanted to, but it started to rain.

(7) ------------------ you (8) ------------- a good weekend?

Mayar : No, I (9) ---------------------- I fell over and hurt my arm, so I

(10) ------------------------------ in bed the whole time!





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Cats have soft ....
   a pens b fur c eyes d legs
2. Cats eat ....
   a fruit b mice c vegetables d paper
3. Cats have sharp ....
   a clowns b claws c ears d heads
4. Cats are the best ....
   a pens b pets c bites d birds

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... is seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.
   a Groom b Grain c Ground d Degree
2. A .... is an object made of stone to look like a person or an animal.
   a stone b statue c bird d material
3. Ancient Egyptians loved .... especially falcons and ibises.
   a lions b birds c metals d plants
4. Many people kept cats as pets because they were .... pets.
   a unknown b popular c dangerous d sad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

statue - pets - favorite - zoo - bananas

Monkeys are funny animals. They are my ❶ .... animals. Many people kept monkeys as ❷ .... They are popular in Egypt. I saw monkeys at the ❸ .... They eat nuts and ❹ .... People put monkeys in cages as pets.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I had a picnic in the park. I went to Al-Azhar Park with my friends. The park was very nice. We played football there. I fell over and hurt my leg. My friends took me to the doctor. The doctor advised me not to play football for a month. <u>He</u> gave me some medicine. I took the medicine and felt better.

Unit 7

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the park ....
   a) last week b) yesterday c) last month d) last year
2. I played .... there.
   a) tennis b) football c) basketball d) chess
3. The underlined pronoun <u>He</u> refers to the ....
   a) friend b) doctor c) park d) football

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did the doctor give you? ....
5. What did you hurt? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Do) you have a nice weekend yesterday?
2. They .... (weren't) go to the park last week.
3. They .... (believes) that cats looked after them.
4. Amr .... (goes) to the market last week.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. No, we didn t ....
2. what did you do ....

7 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Hossam about Ancient Egyptian pets, your name is Hesham and your email address is hesham@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hossam@yahoo.com

مجاب آخر الوحدة

cats - important for farmers

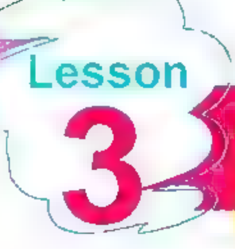
New Message

To .... **Cc** **Bcc**

From ....

Subject ....

....



Part: 1 Metal in Ancient Egypt



Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

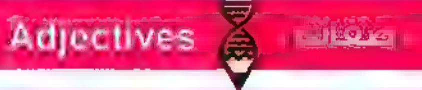
stone	حجر
glass	زجاج
metal	معدن
gold	ذهب
silver	فضة

weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	عدد / أدوات
iron	حديد



Tutankamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
country	دولة
lines	خطوط
chin	ذقن
goods	بضاعة
buying	الشراء
selling	البيع
jewelry	مجوهرات
beard	لحية
culture	ثقافة

top	قمة
whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء
system	نظام
object	شئ / أداة
fighting	قتال
hunting	صيد
art	فن
shape	شكل
craftsmen	حرفيون
sculpture	تمثال منحوت



harder	أكثر صلابة
different	مختلف
popular	شائع / محبوب

rarer	أكثر ندرة
common	شائع / منتشر
fascinating	مذهل

on	على
in	فى
in front of	أمام
between	بين

under	تحت
next to	بجوار
behind	خلف

Unit 7

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
trade	يتاجر	traded
use	يستخدم	used
hunt	يصيد	hunted
melt	يذوب / ينصهر	melted
form	يُشكل	formed
develop	يتطور	developed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
find	يجد	found
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made
grow	يزرع	grew

Definitions

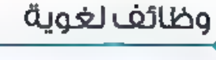
trade	التجارة	buying and selling things between countries.
metal	معدن	something like gold or iron that is hard and strong.
weapon	سلاح	an object used for fighting or hunting animals
economy	اقتصاد	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used

Study the following

1. Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries.
   – تاجر المصريون القدماء مع الدول الأخرى.
2. They first found metal in rocks. – وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن اولاً داخل الصخور.
3. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. – كان المعدن اصلب من الصخور واستطاع المصريين القدماء صهر المعدن وتشكيله لأشكال مختلفة.
4. They used metal to make tools and weapons.
   – استخدم المصريون القدماء المعدن لصناعة الأسلحة والعدد والأدوات.
5. They could hunt and grow the land. – استطاع المصريون القدماء الصيد وزراعة الأرض.
6. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell.
   – كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والأعمال الفنية بغرض البيع.
7. Silver was also used but was rarer.
   – كانت الفضة أيضًا مستخدمة ولكن كانت أكثر ندرة.



Language Functions وظائف لغوية



Prepositions of place

◉ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان الشئ.

- Where's the apple? أين التفاحة؟



It's **on** the box.

It's **in** the box.

It's **in front of** the box.



It's **between** the boxes.



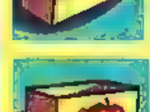
It's **under** the box.



It's **next to** the box.



It's **behind** the box.





Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Injy : Our class presentation(1) is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different(2) countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

Dalia : Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated(3) the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

Injy : That's fascinating(4), Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

Dalia : They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily(5). Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations(6). Silver was also used, but it was rare. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures(7) to sell.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمي
٢- مختلف
٣- سخن
٤- مبهر/خلاب
٥- بسهولة
٦- الديكورات
٧- منحوتات



Injy : That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop[8] their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest[9] economies in the world.

٨- يطور
٩- الأقوى
١٠- قطع أثرية
١١- حقيقى
١٢- حسنًا

Dalia : Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts[10] in museums today to see that this is true[11].

Injy : Well[12], that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions please?

1 Listen again and complete:

استمع مرة أخرى وأكمل:




Tapescript نص الاستماع

shapes - rocks - on - develop - in

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal ❶ .... rocks. Metal was harder than ❷ ...., and they could melt and form it into different ❸ .... They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt ❹ .... the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to ❺ ....

2 Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

اكمل النص مستخدمًا حروف الجر بالإطار:

between - in - on - under



One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found ❶ .... his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines ❷ .... gold lines. ❸ .... his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake ❹ .... the top of his head.

Lesson 3 ★ King Midas and the Golden touch

Part: 2 ★ Pronunciation





استمع إلى المفردات:

trip over	يتعثر
hug	يعانق
tears	دموع
castle	قلعة

reward	مكافأة
rose	وردة
daughter	ابنة
human	إنسان



true	حقيقة
night	ليلة
world	عالم
around	حول
outside	بالخارج
before	قبل
goat	معزة
garden	حديقة

ground	أرضية
wish	أمنية
chair	كرسي
again	مرة أخرى
minute	دقيقة
trip over	يتعثر
meal	وجبة

Adjectives



sick	مريض
kind	عطوف
warm	دافئ
golden	ذهبي

special	خاص / مميز
precious	ثمين
strange-looking	غريب المظهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
trip over	يتعثر فى	tripped over
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
call	يدعى / يسمى	called
turn into	يتحول إلى	turned into
start	يبدأ	started
care	يعتنى	cared
save	ينقذ	saved
return	يعود	returned
hug	يعانق	hugged
touch	يلمس	touched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take	يأخذ	took
give	يعطى	gave
feel	يشعر	felt
leave	يغادر	left
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost
spend	يقضى	spent
come true	يصبح حقيقة	came true



Study the following

1. Many years ago, there lived a king called king Midas.

– منذ سنوات عديدة، عاش هناك ملك يدعى الملك ميداس.

2. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold.

– كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أى شئ وهم ابنته مارى جولد وحديقة الورود والذهب.

3. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold.

– كان الشئ المفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت فى حديقته مع ابنته مارى جولد.

4. He also liked to look at all the gold in the castle.

– أحب (الملك) أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل الذهب فى قلعته.

5. One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground.

– فى احد الليالى، كان يمشى الملك فى حديقته عندما تعثر فى شئ ما على الأرض.

6. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick

– كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. كانت مريضة جدًا.

7. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle.

– كان الملك ميداس رجلاً عطوفا، لذلك أخذ العنزة إلى قلعته.

8. He gave it food and warm bed.

– أعطى الملك العنزة طعامًا وسريرًا دافئًا.

9. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

– ما هو أكثر شئ فى العالم تريده؟

10 "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold".

– "أود أن يتحول كل ما ألمسه إلى ذهب".

11 The goat made the king's wish come true.

– حققت العنزة رغبة الملك.

12 When he touched a chair, it turned into gold.

– عندما لمس الملك كرسيًا تحول الكرسي إلى ذهب.

13 When he touched his bed, it turned into gold.

– عندما لمس سريره، تحول السرير إلى ذهب.

14 His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold.

– سقطت دموع الملك على وروده الثمينة وتحولت إلى ذهب.

15 Your family is more important than money and material things.

– عائلتك أهم من المال والأشياء المادية.

استمع إلى النص:



KING MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH



Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.

– منذ سنوات عديدة. عاش حينها ملك يدعى الملك ميداس. كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أي شئ آخر: ابنته ماري جولد وحديقة الورود والذهب. كان الشئ المفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت في حديقته مع ماري جولد. لكنه كان يحب أيضا النظر إلى كل الذهب في قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

– في إحدى الليالي، كان يمشي في حديقته عندما تعثر في شئ ما [illegible] مريضة جدا وكان الملك ميداس رجلا لطيفا. لذلك أخذ العنزة الى قلعته واعطاها طعاما وسريرا دافئا وفي الصباح شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

- قالت العنزة "أود أن اشكرك يا ملك ميداس. "ماذا تريد اكثر من اى شئ آخر فى العالم؟"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

- فكر الملك ميداس لدقيقة ثم قال "أود أن يتحول كل ما المسه إلى ذهب".

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

- قالت العنزة حسنا. ثم تحولت امنية الملك إلى حقيقة.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

- كان الملك متحمسا جدا وبعد مغادرة العنزة بدا فى التجول فى القلعة. عندما لمس كرسيا تحول إلى ذهب. عندما لمس سريره تحول الى ذهب ايضا. وللاحتفال طلب وجبة خاصة ولكن عندما لمس الطعام لم يستطيع تناوله لانه تحول إلى ذهب. بعد ذلك خرج الى الحديقة للعثور على مارى جولد. عندما عانقها تحولت أيضا إلى ذهب.

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold." His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

- بدا الملك ميداس فى البكاء. من فضلك ارجعى ايتها العنزة. قال لا يمكننى ان افقد مارى جولد. سقطت دموعه على وروده الثمينه وتحولت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود او الذهب. اراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before.

- سمعت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغير كل شئ إلى ما كان عليه من قبل.

"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

- شكرا جزيلًا لك! لن اعتقد ابدًا أن الذهب مهم جدًا!

Read again and choose the moral a, b, or c:

اقرأ مرة اخرى ثم اختر الدرس الاخلاقى فى القصة :

a. It's good to have a lot of gold and be rich. ☐

b. You will always get a reward if you are unkind. ☐

c. Your family is more important than money and material things ☐







Pronunciation

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /er/ كما بالكلمات الاتية.



sound
/er/



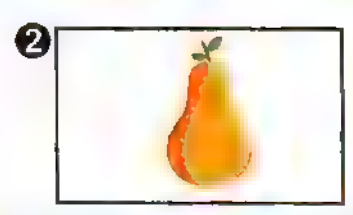
1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then listen, check, and repeat:

انظر إلى الصور واكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة بالمربع.

air - pair - pear - rare - tear - wear

1. 

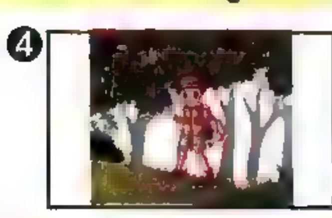
That gemstone is very rare it's not easy to find.

2. 

This ...... looks delicious.

3. 

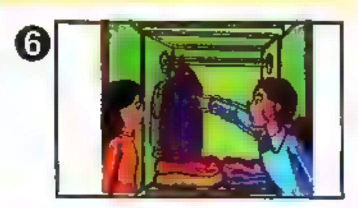
There's a ...... of brown shoes.

4. 

I like walking in the fresh ....

5. 

Don't pull that - you'll ...... it!

6. 

What do you want to ...... today?

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An .... is the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
   a metal b weapon c economy d tool
2. .... is a very precious metal.
   a Paper b Gold c Plastic d Rock
3. The boy started crying. His .... fell on his face.
   a tooth b tears c arms d legs
4. Ancient Egyptians used metal to make .... to hunt.
   a economy b weapons c trade d glass

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

mask - gold - melt - weapons - trade

Ancient Egyptians used metal in different things. They used metal to make ① .... to hunt and grow land. They could ② .... it and form it into different shapes. Ancient Egyptians used ③ .... to make jewelry. Gold was a popular metal. They used gold to make Tutankhamun's ④ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Metals had a great role in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians had a lot of metals including gold, silver and iron. Ancient Egyptians made the jewelry from gold. It was valuable and precious. They also used silver. Silver was less common in Ancient Egypt. Iron was used to make tools and weapons.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made the jewelry from ....
   a iron b gold c stone d paper
2. Gold was .... and precious.
   a valuable b bad c small d far
3. .... was less common in Ancient Egypt.
   a Gold b Silver c Iron d Copper



B- Answer the following questions:

4. What was iron used for?

----

5. Mention three metals from the passage.

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. could - They - hunt - and - land - grow - the.

----

2. tools - used - They - metal - weapons - to - make - and.

----

3. than money - more - Your family - important - is.

----

4. will - I - never - gold - think - so - is - important - again.

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The apples are in front ------------- (on) the box.
2. It's next --------- (of) the book.
3. Many years ago, there ------------- (live) a king.
4. He didn't -------------- (fell) on the ground.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the mask is gold

----

2. where is the eraser

Lessons

4&5 Writing and project





استمع إلى المفردات:

copper	نحاس	dagger	خنجر
bronze	برونز	mine	يستخرج / منجم
iron	حديد	precious	ثمين
meteorite	نيزك	fire	لهب / نار
silver	فضة	heaven	السماء
Scarab Amulet	الجعران الفرعونى		



mirror	مرآه	fortune	حظ
sheet silver	ورق الفضة	craftsmen	حرفيين (اصحاب حرفة)
salt	ملح	possible	ممكن
amazingly	من المثير للدهشة	item	أشياء / سلع
later	فيما بعد	agricultural	زراعى
result	نتيجة	image	صورة

Questions words كلمات استفهام



When.........?	متى؟	What.........?	ما / ماذا؟
Where.........?	أين؟	Why.........?	لماذا؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
start	يبدأ	started
mine	ينقب / يستخرج	mined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
make	يصنع	made
come	يأتى	came

protect	يحمى	protected
appear	يظهر	appeared
divide	يقسم	divided
decorate	يُزين	decorated

begin	يبدأ	began
bring	يُحضر	brought



Study the following

1. The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago.
   – بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الحديد منذ اكثر من خمسة الالاف عامًا.
2. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites.
   – من المثير للدهشة. بعض الحديد المستخدم منذ القدم كان من النيازك.
3. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite.
   – صنع المصريون القدماء خنجرًا مشهور لمقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون من نيزك.
4. They also mined iron from the ground.
   – قام المصريون القدماء بالتنقيب عن الحديد من الأرض.
5. They found it difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt.
   – وجد المصريون القدماء صعوبة فى استخدام الحديد لأنه يحتاج إلى حرارة عالية للأنصهار.
6. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky.
   – اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن الحديد كان معدنًا مميزًا لأنهم اعتقدوا انه يأتى من السماء.
7. They called it "the metal of heaven".
   – قام المصريون القدماء بتسمية الحديد "معدن السماء".
8. Iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.
   – كان الحديد اكثر قيمة من الذهب لأنه كان وجوده اكثر ندره من الذهب.
9. The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry.
   – استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد فى صنع الأشياء الصغيرة مثل المجوهرات.
10. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find.
   – كان استخدام المعادن مثل النحاس والبرونز اكثر شيوعًا فى صناعة العدد والأدوات لان الحصول عليهم كان اسهل.
11. Iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear.
   – بدأت الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة المصنوعة من الحديد فى الظهور.


Unit 7



How to write a fact file
كيف تكتب ملف حقائق

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة (ملف حقائق) عن موضوع ما ويكون كالآتى:

1. Questions:

١- الأسئلة عن الموضوع:

- مثلاً عن ورق البردى

1- What is the papyrus?

2- Where can you find papyrus?

3- Why do we need papyrus?

4- When did they start using papyrus?

٢- البحث عن الحقائق الخاصة بالموضوع بالإجابة على هذه الأسئلة.

◉ وفيما يلى نموذج لملف حقائق عن ورق البردى:

Papyrus in Ancient Egypt

What is the papyrus?	It's a special plant for making paper. Ancient Egyptians used it.
Where can you find papyrus?	You can find papyrus near the River Nile, it needs a lot of water to grow.
Why did Ancient Egyptians need papyrus?	Ancient Egyptians needed papyrus to make paper to write on it.
When did they start using papyrus?	They used papyrus in Ancient Egypt.

1 **Read the fact file. Why did Ancient Egyptians call iron "the metal of heaven"?:**

اقرأ ملف الحقائق. لماذا قام المصريون القدماء بتسمية الحديد (معدن السماء):


استمع إلى النص:







Iron in Ancient Egypt

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

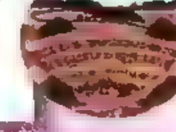
The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before[1] iron, they worked with copper and bronze.



Where did they find iron?

Amazingly[2], some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt[3], which often wasn't possible[4].





Why did they think iron was special?

They thought iron was special[5] because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven" [6]. For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

What did they use iron for?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common[7] metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later[8] on, iron agricultural[9] tools and weapons began to appear[10]. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

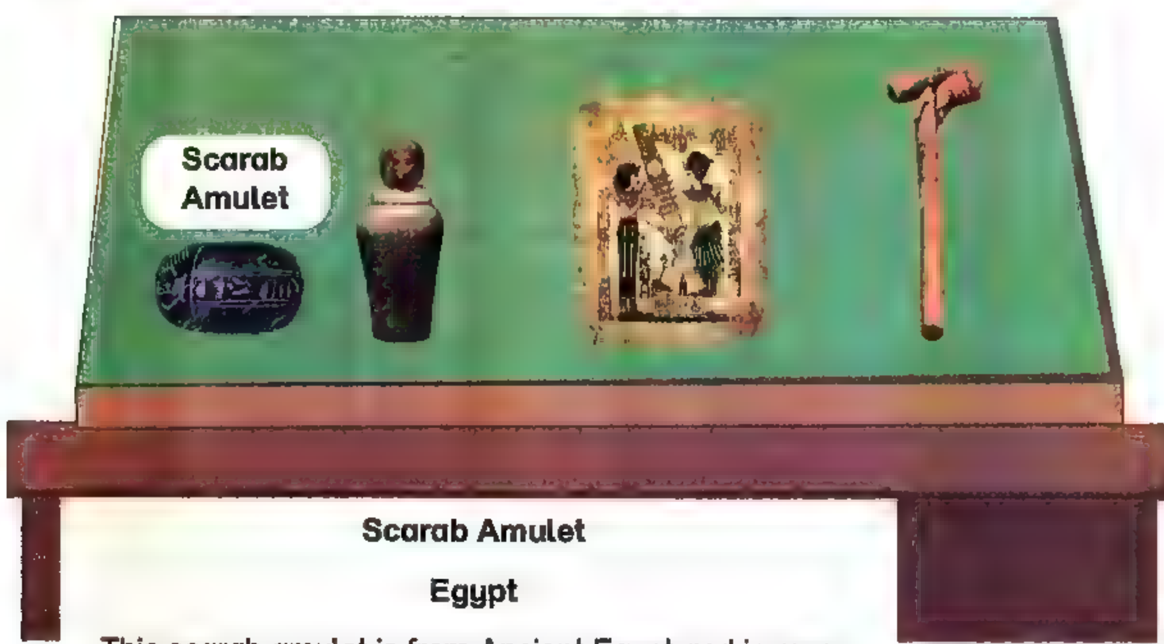
Arabic Meaning

١- قبل
٢- من المدهش
٣- يذوب
٤- ممكن
٥- مميز
٦- السماء
٧- شائع
٨- لاحقا
٩- زراعي
١٠- يظهر

2 Work in groups of three. Think and research:

اعملوا فى مجموعات من ثلاثة طلاب. فكر وابحث:

Look at the artifacts in the museum gallery. Then, read the display board for the scarab amulet.



Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الجعران تعود لمصر القديمة وعمرها أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ عام. مصنوعة من النحاس. ارتدى الناس مجوهرات عليها صورة التميمة لتحميهم وتجلب لهم الحظ الجيد.





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. .... was used for different things in Ancient Egypt.
   a Plastic b Silver c Bronze d Iron
2. Ancient Egyptians used silver to make ....
   a tools b jewelry c paper d wood
3. Ancient Egyptians used silver as a form of ....
   a pens b currency c food d drinks
4. Silver was used for making .... and necklaces.
   a earrings b bracelets c shoes d glasses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a rock that came from the sky.
   a copper b meteorite c star d bronze
2. A .... is a special tool like a knife used as a weapon.
   a rock b dagger c sheet d tomb
3. To use the iron into different things. You need to .... it before.
   a play b melt c eat d see
4. When something has a great value, it is ....
   a difficult b precious c easy d small

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Iron had a great role in Ancient Egypt. It wasn't used as the materials like copper and bronze. Ancient Egyptians considered iron the most valuable and precious metal.It was first used to decorate things like jewelry and small objects. Iron was rare in Ancient Egypt.

Ancient Egyptians first used iron from meteorites. It was the main source of iron. After that, Ancient Egyptians mined the iron from the ground. They made tools and weapons from iron.



Unit 7

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... had a great role in Ancient Egypt.

   a Paper b Iron c Stone d Tools

2. Ancient Egyptians considered iron the most .... metal.

   a bad b happy c precious d sad

3. First, Ancient Egyptians used iron from ....

   a mines b meteorites c copper d bronze

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did Ancient Egyptians used iron for? ....

5. What's the main source of iron in Ancient Egypt? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. also - They - mined - the ground - iron - from. ....

2. needs - It - a very hot - fire - melt - to. ....

3. bronze - Copper - and - common - were - metals. ....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

Iron in Ancient Egypt

Guiding fact file

1- Where did Ancient Egyptians find it?

2- What did Ancient Egyptians use iron for?

....

....

....

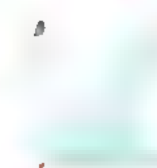
....

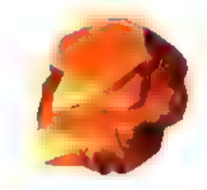
....

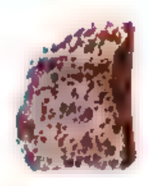
....




clay صلصال


glass زجاج

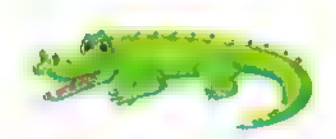

gold ذهب


granite حجر جرانيت


paper ورق


papyrus ورق البردى


baboon قرد البابون


crocodile تمساح


falcon صقر


hippo فرس النهر


ibis طائر أبو منجل


monkey قرد



snake ثعبان


rat(s) فأر كبير (فئران)


mouse (mice) فأر (فئران)

artifacts	قطع أثرية
stone	حجر
metal	معدن
silver	فضة
durable	صلب / قوى التحمل

fascinating	مبهر / خلاب
weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	عدد / أدوات
iron	حديد

Adjectives  صفات

free	خالى من / حُر
dangerous	خطير
difficult	صعب
harder	اكثر صلابة
different	مختلف

interesting	مثير للاهتمام
popular / common	شائع / منتشر
important	مهم
rarer	اكثر ندرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
damage	يتلف / يدمر	damaged
preserve	يحفظ / يصون	preserved
cover	يغطى	covered
last	يدوم	lasted
adore	يعشق	adored
mummify	يحنط	mummified
believe	يعتقد	believed
produce	ينتج	produced
trade	يتاجر	traded
hunt	يصيد	hunted
melt	يذوب / ينصهر	melted
form	يشكل	formed
trip over	يتعثر فى	tripped over
hug	يعانق	hugged
touch	يلمس	touched
mine	ينقب / يستخرج	mined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
know	يعرف	knew
hear	يسمع	heard
find	يجد	found
am / is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
become	يصبح	became
teach	يعلم	taught
grow up	يكبر	grew up
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought
grow	يزرع	grew
feel	يشعر	felt
leave	يغادر	left
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost

Language قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved animals.



2 Form التكوين

Subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied:

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط :

- love → love(d)   dance → dance(d)
- need → needed   study → studied   - stop → stopped

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- keep → kept   become → became

3 Negative النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

Subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- Mice didn't eat grains.

4 Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	last (week / month / year)	ago
in the past	in + year (in 2010)	

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

◉ **Verb to be in the past** فعل يكون في الماضي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt..

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were):

- Adam wasn't at school yesterday.   - They were happy last week.





Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Lesson 1

Ancient Egyptian artifacts

1 Ancient Egyptians had a lot of artifacts. They also used gold to make a lot of things in Tutankhamun's tomb. They liked to use gold because it's valuable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition. Ancient Egyptians used materials that could last forever. They use granite to build the Pyramids.

Lesson 2

2

New Message		
To	hossam@yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	hesham@gmail.com	
Subject	Ancient Egyptian pets	

Dear Hossam,

How are you? I want to tell you about Ancient Egyptian pets. Ancient Egyptians loved pets. They adored cats. They believed that cats were important for farmers. Cats ate mice. They kept houses free of mice. The houses were free of pests like snakes and rats. Ancient Egyptians loved birds, too.

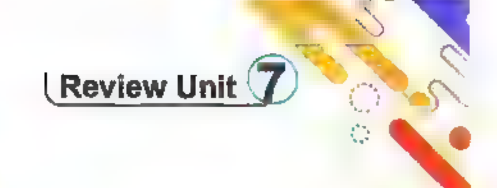
Yours

Hesham

Lessons 4&5

Iron in Ancient Egypt

3 The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they thought first that iron came from the sky. They called it the "metal of heaven". Iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer. They thought iron was special because it came from meteorites.



Al-Azhar Exercises

Metal in Ancient Egypt

4 There were a lot of metals in Ancient Egypt. They were copper, silver, iron and gold. They used metals in different things. They used iron to make weapons and tools. They mined metals from the ground.

Activity Unit 7

Tutankhamun's Mask

5 Tutankhamun's Mask is an Egyptian artifact. It's one of the most beautiful artifacts in Ancient Egypt. The mask is made of gold with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head. Ancient Egyptians used gold to make artifacts because it is valuable, but it is also very durable.

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

iron - tools - did - used - popular

Amr : Good morning, Mr Tarek.

Mr Tarek : Good morning, Amr.

Amr : What ❶ ------------------------------ the Ancient Egyptians trade first?

Mr Tarek : They traded ❷ ------------------------------.

Amr : What did they use it for?

Mr Tarek : They used it to make ❸ ------------------------------.

Amr : What was the ❹ ------------------------------ metal for making jewelry?

Mr Tarek : They ❺ ------------------------------ gold.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1. gold	silver	copper	beautiful	-----
2. in	on	box	next to	-----
3. hugged	played	eat	loved	-----
4. sick	popular	precious	goat	-----
5. when	tomb	where	what	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ------------- is an object made of stone to look like a person or an animal.

   a statue   b pet   c metal   d rate

2. The gemstone is very ----------, it's not easy to find.

   a bad   b rare   c cheap   d sick

3. Ancient Egyptians ---------- iron from the ground.

   a ate   b mined   c played   d fell

Help your child deal with such questions.   ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. Ancient Egyptians used .... to hunt animals.

a clay b weapons c gold d paper

5. One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's ....

a mask b meteorite c pen d goat

6. The book is in front .... the desk.

a on b to c of d at

7. .... you have a nice weekend?

a Were b Did c Is d Does

8. He .... to the ground last week.

a fall b falls c fell d felt

9. Ancient Egyptians first found metal .... the ground.

a of b in c next d between

10. A: .... is the pen? B: It's on the desk.

a What b Where c Who d Why

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Papyrus was an ancient writing material in Ancient Egypt.. This material was used in Ancient Egypt. Papyrus grew along the River Nile. Papyrus needed a lot of water to grow. Papyrus was a valuable material. Paper was made from the papyrus plant. Papyrus grew in dry climates. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make baskets and sandals, too.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What was papyrus? ....

2. Where did papyrus grow? ....

3. What did papyrus need to grow? ....

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Paper was made from the papyrus ....

a flower b plant c root d seed

5. Papyrus grew in a .... climate.

a wet b dry c bad d sad

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. would - What - like - you - know - to?

----

2. are - Cats - still - popular - in - Egypt - pets.

----

3. fell over - I - hurt - and - arm - my.

----

4. next to - The library - is - the - computer - room.

----

5. Bronze - copper - and - common - were - metals.

----

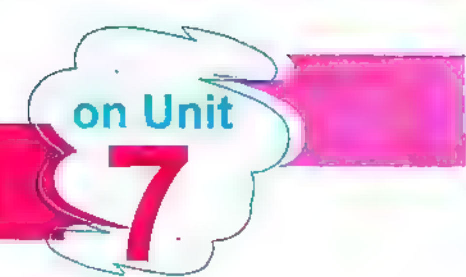
6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

copper - silver - iron - gold - mined





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Shehab went to the Pyramids ....
   a yesterday b last week c today d last month
2. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids from ....
   a granite b clay c paper d mud
3. Shehab visited the Khufu .... ship.
   a solar b bird c sand d clay
4. Shehab saw the .... near the Pyramids.
   a bus b Sphinx c horse d car

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... is the system of how country's money and goods are produced and used.
   a Trade b Metal c Economy d Granite
2. Ancient Egyptians used gold in jewelry because it was ....
   a bad b precious c easy d sad
3. Ancient Egyptians loved .... especially falcons and ibises.
   a fish b birds c plants d stones
4. Farmers produced a lot of ....
   a mice b grain c cats d baboons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

safe - pets - drew - adored - statues

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and birds. They (1) .... them on the walls of temples. They (2) .... cats and kept them as (3) .... The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

I'm Hazem. I visited the Museum of Ancient History last month. I went with my friends. We went by bus on a school trip. The museum was great. There were many artifacts. Egypt has many artifacts from the past. We saw Tutankhamun's mask. It

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

was very beautiful. It is made of gold. There is a snake on the top of his head.We learnt about history. It was a great visit.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hazem visited the museum ....

a last month   b yesterday   c last week   d last year

2. They went to the museum by ....

a car   b bus   c bike   d train

3. There is a .... on the top of the mask.

a cat   b snake   c rat   d monkey

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for the passage. ....

5. What is Tutankhamun's mask made of? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Crocodiles - popular - weren't - pets. ....

2. walking - I - in - like - fresh - the - air. ....

3. Egyptians - The Ancient - iron - used - small - for - items. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Why .... (were) iron difficult to work with?

2. I didn't .... (played) football yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- No we didn't ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

beautiful artifacts - gold

....

....

....



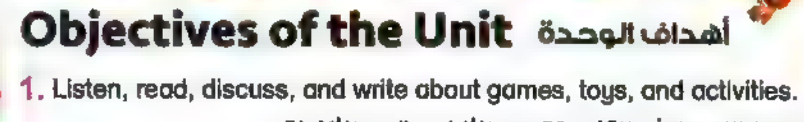
Unit 8

Toys and games









Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويناقش ويكتب عن الألعاب واللعب والأنشطة.
2. Listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ حوار عن الألعاب واللعب القديمة.
3. Use verb intensifiers.
   - يستخدم الطالب المعززات اللفظية للفعل.
4. Listen to and understand a story about a toy.
   - يستمع الطالب إلى قصة عن لعبة ويفهمها.
5. Use verbs that are followed by -ing.
   - يستخدم الطالب الأفعال التي يتبعها ing.
6. Spell and say words containing gh or ght.
   - يتهجى الطالب وينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على gh أو ght.
7. Use pie charts and bar graphs.
   - يستخدم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية والرسوم البيانية الشريطية.
8. Write a description of your favorite game.
   - يكتب الطالب وصفًا للعبته المفضلة.
9. Design and make a simple board game
   - يصمم الطالب ويصنع لعبة لوحية بسيطة





1 A BOX OF TOYS

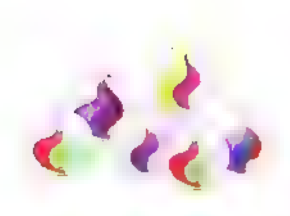

استمع إلى المفردات:


مجسم شخصية كرتونية


لعبة لوحية


دمية العناق


بيت الدمية


بلي


حذاء بعجلات


لوح تزلج


نموذج القطار اللعبة

beat	يهزم
make up	يؤلف / يخترع

have a go	يجرب



actually	في الحقيقة / بالفعل	old toys	اللعب القديمة
younger	أصغر سنا	brilliant	رائع
though	رغم ذلك	later	لاحقًا / فيما بعد
both	كلا / كلتا	cool	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
invent	يخترع	invented
look	ينظر	looked
love	يحب	loved
play	يلعب	played
visit	يزور	visited
want	يريد	wanted

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
beat	يهزم	beat
find	يجد	found
have a go	يجرب	had a go
make up	يخترع	made up
see	يرى	saw
think	يفكر	thought

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	So did I	وأنا كذلك
lots of	كثير من	look for	يبحث عن
after a while	بعد حين		

Definitions التعريفات

beat	يهزم	be more successful than someone in a game
have a go	يجرب	try something
made up	يخترع	thought of or invented

Study the following

1. Did you visit your grandma on the weekend? – هل زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
2. I found a box of my old toys. – لقد وجدت صندوق لعبي القديمة.
3. What did you find in there? – ماذا وجدت بداخله؟
4. There was an action figure. – كان هناك مجسم شخصية كرتونية.
5. I made up lots of games for them. – لقد صنعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.
6. When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set. – عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي نموذج القطار اللعبة.
7. My sister had a big doll's house. – كان لدى أختي بيت دمى كبير.

8. Did you have a go on them?

– هل قمت بتجربتهم؟

9. I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard.

– لم يكن لدي حذاء تزلج، لكن كان لدي لوح تزلج.

10. I could go really fast after a while!

– تمكنت من الانطلاق بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة!

11. Did you play board games when you were younger?

– هل كنت تلعب الألعاب اللوحية عندما كنت أصغر سناً؟

12. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

– لقد لعبت مع أخي الأكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

13. We didn't play board games very often.

– لم نلعب الألعاب اللوحية كثيرًا.

14. I think I'll look for some of my old toys later.

– أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض لُعبي القديمة لاحقًا.

15. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.

– أحب أن أرى دمية العناق المفضلة لدي مرة أخرى.

1 Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript  **نص الاستماع**

Fares : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

Yaseen : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually[1].

Adam : What did you find in there?

Yaseen : There was an action figure[2]. I loved playing with it!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I made up[3] lots of games for them.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set[4].

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house[5]. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades[6], though.

Arabic Meaning

١- بالفعل
٢- نموذج متحرك
٣- يخترع
٤- نموذج قطار لعبة
٥- بيت الدمية
٦- حذاء بعجلات





Adam : Brilliant[7]! Did you have a go[8] on them?

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

Fares : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard[9]. I could go really fast after a while[10]!

Yaseen : Cool! Did you play board games[11] when you were younger?

Fares : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat[12] me!

Adam : We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles[13].

Fares : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy[14] again.

Arabic Meaning

٧- رائع
٨- يجرب
٩- لوح تزلج
١٠- بعد حين
١١- ألعاب لوحية
١٢- يهزم
١٣- بلي
١٤- دمية العناق

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

اللعب مفيد لنا من عدة نواحي مختلفة: عندما نلعب، نشعر بالسعادة. كما نتعلم عن العالم وعن أنفسنا. عندما نلعب، نتعلم كيفية حل المشاكل وتكوين الصداقات.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Rana puts her old toys in ....
   a a book b a box c rollerblades d a shop
2. I like playing with a/an .... figure. It's my favorite toy.
   a train b house c board d action
3. You can go fast on ....
   a rollerblades b marbles c board games d doll's houses
4. My little sister always takes her favorite .... toy to bed.
   a candy b cuddly c action d country
5. I like making up games for my .... figures.
   a cuddly b train c skateboard d action
6. Playing is .... for us in lots of different ways.
   a good b bad c terrible d boring
7. Tarek's favorite game is a train ....
   a sit b set c sat d pet
8. I can't .... a go on my old rollerblades because they are too small.
   a have b do c run d make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

make - figure - toys - have - train

My brother and I still keep the boxes of our old ① .... There are many toys in them. My favorite toy was an action ② .... which I used to play with and ③ .... up games for it. My brother's favorite toy as a child was a ④ .... set. He used to play with it all the time.

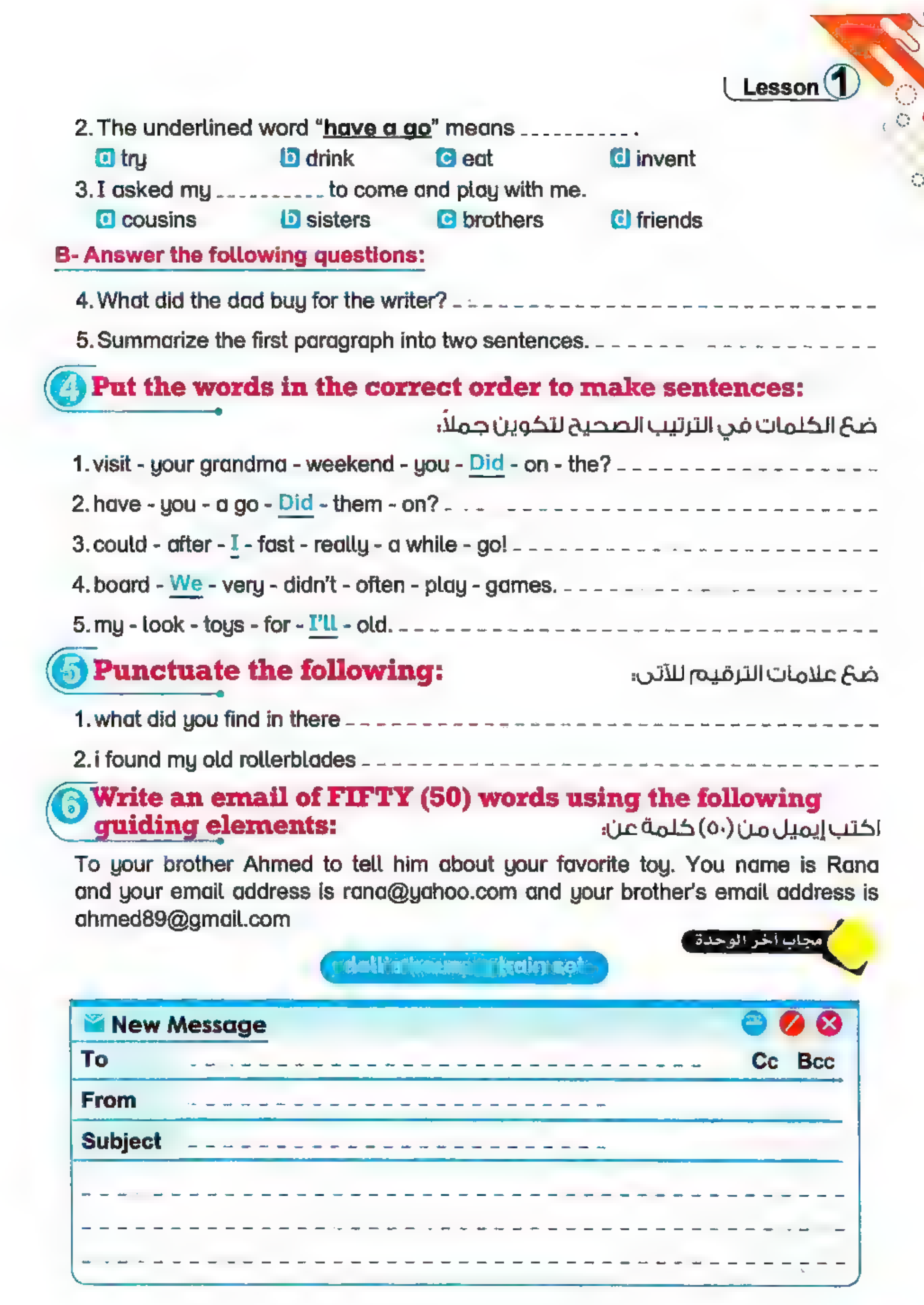
3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I was very excited when my dad came home with a new toy for me. It was a wonderful red car with a remote control that could do all kinds of cool tricks. I couldn't wait to take it outside and have a go with it around the garden.

My dad also bought more batteries so we could play with it for hours. I couldn't believe how lucky I was to have such a fun toy, and I couldn't wait to show all my friends. I called them and asked them to come and play with me.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "It" refers to the ....
   a home b toy c dad d garden



2. The underlined word "**have a go**" means ....
   a) try   b) drink   c) eat   d) invent
3. I asked my .... to come and play with me.
   a) cousins   b) sisters   c) brothers   d) friends

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did the dad buy for the writer? ....
5. Summarize the first paragraph into two sentences. ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. visit - your grandma - weekend - you - Did - on - the? ....
2. have - you - a go - Did - them - on? ....
3. could - after - I - fast - really - a while - go! ....
4. board - We - very - didn't - often - play - games. ....
5. my - look - toys - for - I'll - old. ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what did you find in there ....
2. i found my old rollerblades ....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your brother Ahmed to tell him about your favorite toy. You name is Rana and your email address is rana@yahoo.com and your brother's email address is ahmed89@gmail.com

مجاب أخر الوحدة

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

I WAS VERY GOOD AT HIDE AND SEEK

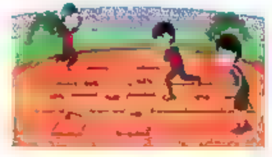




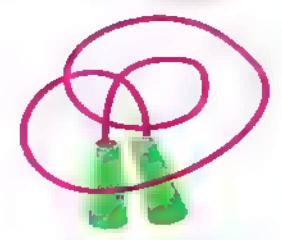




hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية



hopscotch
لعبة الحجلة



skipping
لعبة نط الحبل



different	مختلف
difficult	صعب
helmet	خوذة
hiding	اختفاء
imagination	خيال
interesting	مثير للاهتمام

knee pads	واقي الركبة
outside	الخارج
project	مشروع
squares	مربعات
stickers	ملصقات
stories	قصص

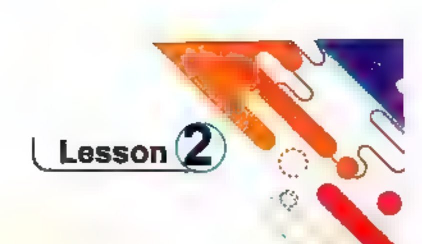
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ
climb	يتسلق	climbed
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
practice	يمارس	practiced
prefer	يفضل	preferred
start	يبدأ	started
use	يستخدم	used
want	يريد	wanted

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ
fall	يسقط	fell
seek	يبحث	sought
have	يملك	had
make up	يؤلف	made up
run	يجري	ran
draw	يرسم	drew
hide	يختفي	hid
wear	يرتدي	wore



Study the following

1. Have you started the project about toys and games yet?

- هل بدأت المشروع الخاص باللعب والألعاب حتى الآن؟

2. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

- ما هي الألعاب التي كنت تحب لعبها عندما كنت أصغر؟

3. I thought hide and seek was fun.

- اعتقدت أن الاستغماية كانت ممتعة.

4. I was very good at hiding!

- لقد كنت جيدًا جدًا في الاختباء!

5. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends.

- لقد أحببت جدًا لعب الحجلة مع أصدقائي.

6. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

- استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

7. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

- اعتقدت أن الحجلة كانت جيدة جدًا، لكنني فضلت نط الحبل.

8. I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it.

- أحببت نط الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدًا في ذلك.

9. Some skipping games are so difficult!

- بعض ألعاب القفز صعبة للغاية!

10. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

- كان علي أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

11. We often played marbles together, though.

- رغم ذلك، كنا نلعب البلي معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

12. I really enjoyed riding my bike.

- لقد استمتعت حقا بركوب دراجتي.

13. I was very good at making up stories.

- لقد كنت جيدًا جدًا في تأليف القصص.

Unit 3

1 Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript  **نص الاستماع**

Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project[1] about toys and games yet?

Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

Rania : I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding[2]!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different[3] colored chalk to draw the squares[4].

Rania : I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult[5]!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

Arabic Meaning

1- مشروع
2- الاختباء
3- مختلف
4- مربعات
5- صعب

2 Read the description and answer the questions:

اقرأ الوصف ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

1 

2 

3 

My Favorite Toy
by Youssef

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers[1] on it. I had to wear a helmet[2] and knee pads[3]. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

Arabic Meaning

1- ملصقات
2- خوذة
3- واقي الركبة

1. Where did Youssef play with his skateboard? ....
2. Who did he play with? ....
3. What did he have to wear? ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination[1]. She was very good at making up stories[2]. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.
Nour really enjoyed playing outside[3] when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

Arabic Meaning
١- تخيل
٢- قصص
٣- بالخارج

1 What did Amina like? ....
2 What was Amina good at? ....
3 What did Nour like? ....
4 What was Nour good at? ....

Language focus قواعد لغوية

Intensifiers اللفظية

> We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.
◉ نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

> We can use really, very, or so to strengthen an adjective:
◉ يمكننا استخدام (really، very، أو so) لتعزيز الصفة:

- I was really / very good at hiding!
- Some skipping games are so difficult.

> We can also use really to strengthen a verb:
◉ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:

- I really liked playing hopscotch.
- I really feel happy when I be with you

> We can use at all to strengthen negative sentences:
◉ يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية:

- He didn't like skipping at all!
- Sandy isn't beautiful at all.

> We can also use quite to make the meaning of an adjective less strong:
◉ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة:

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.
- I feel quite nervous before the exams.

تعزيز الصفات	تعزيز الأفعال	تعزيز النفي	جعل الصفة أقل
so / very / really	really	at all	quite

Unit

1 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences in your notebook:** ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل فى كراستك.

1. board - games - I - like - really - playing.

2. quite - Skateboarding - good - is.

3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting.

4. Nadia - marbles - pretty - very - some - has.

5. didn't - Asser - train - sets - at all - like.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .... liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
   a. really b. very c. so d. at all
2. I thought action figures were .... good, but I preferred train sets.
   a. at all b. quite c. quiet d. to
3. My brother was .... good at football. He always beat me!
   a. very b. at all c. quiet d. but
4. You're .... good at hide and seek. You always hide in the best places!
   a. quite b. to c. at all d. so
5. This book is not funny ....
   a. at all b. very c. so d. quite
6. I .... enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
   a. very b. really c. at all d. so



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. When I was young, my favorite toy was my __________ .
   a action figure b bike c train set d skateboard
2. My skateboard is __________ with orange and yellow stickers.
   a black b red c blue d green
3. Playing at the __________ with friends was good fun.
   a school b park c garden d house
4. I get my first skateboard when I was __________ .
   a seven b ten c eight d six

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Rodina likes playing __________ . She is very good at hiding.
   a hide and seek b skipping c hopscotch d marbles
2. I don't like skipping games because they are __________ .
   a funny b difficult c good d great
3. Rana likes going to the park and going fast on her __________ .
   a whiteboard b marbles c skateboard d helmet
4. I wear my __________ to protect my head.
   a knee pad b helmet c shoes d skateboard
5. At school, we use chalk to make a __________ game.
   a hopscotch b hide and seek c skateboard d skipping
6. My brother is really good at __________ and seek.
   a run b skip c hide d hop
7. It really __________ if you fall off a skateboard.
   a hurts b jumps c hearts d swims
8. Farah wears __________ to protect her knees.
   a helmets b hats c knee pads d sneakers

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 1

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed, Rodaina, Zahraa, and Basmalla went to the park for some fun. They decided to play hide-and-seek. Ahmed counted to 100 while the others found their hiding places. Rodaina hid behind a big tree so that no one could see <u>**her**</u>. Zahraa hid behind a bench. Basmalla climbed up a small tree and hid between its branches.

Ahmed searched for them and finally found Rodaina behind the tree. After a few more minutes of searching, he found Zahraa and Basmalla. They all laughed and congratulated each other on their smart hiding places. They had a great time playing games and laughing at the park.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**her**" refers to ....
   a Zahraa   b Basmalla   c Rodaina   d Ahmed
2. Ahmed counted to ....
   a hundred   b ten   c thousand   d five
3. Basmalla hid .... the tree.
   a behind   b under   c above   d in front of

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the suitable title for the passage?

....

5. How many friends went to the park?

....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. difficult - are - games - Some - skipping - so.

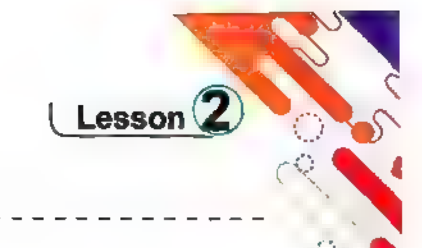
....

2. playing - did - What - like - you - games?

....

3. riding - I - enjoyed - my - really - bike.

....



4. sister - to - I had - with - practice - a lot - my.

---

5. and - thought - I - fun - seek - hide - was.

---

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Shaimaa .... (very) enjoys playing marbles.
2. I don't like playing football .... (all).
3. I think hopscotch is .... (all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
4. Randa is .... (at all) polite, everyone likes her.
5. This toy is .... (quite) interesting. I love it very much.
6. Tarek speaks English .... (quite) well. He speaks like a teacher.
7. This park is .... (very) a good place to make our birthday. Everyone likes it.
8. It's .... (quite) hot in the desert. We can't go there now.
9. Hany is a lazy student. Teachers don't like him .... (very).
10. A lion is a .... (at all) dangerous animal than a camel.
11. This is a boring film. We don't like it .... (quite).
12. My son is .... (quite) sick today so he couldn't go to school.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what was amina good at?

---

2. I don t use it at all

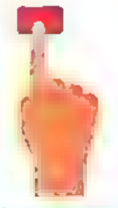
Lesson 3

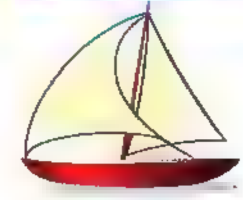
WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET





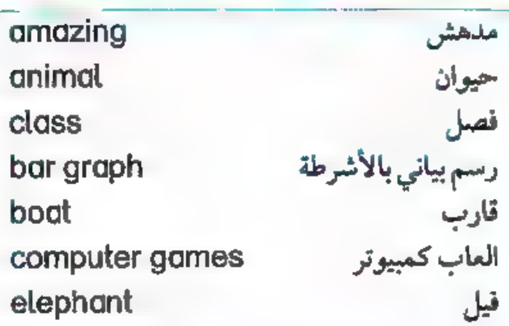



button
زر


sail
شراع


stall
طاولة عرض البضائع (كشك)


trunk
خرطوم الفيل / زلومة



amazing	مدهش
animal	حيوان
class	فصل
bar graph	رسم بياني بالأشرطة
boat	قارب
computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر
elephant	فيل
large table	طاولة كبيرة
tomatoes	طماطم
cloth	قماش

lemonade	عصير الليمون
machine	آلة
market	سوق
pie chart	رسم بياني دائري
store	محل
strong pieces	قطع قوية
toys	ألعاب الأطفال
wood	خشب
wheel	إطار سيارة / عجلة
parents	الوالدين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
shop	يتسوق	shopped
smile	يبتسم	smiled
move	يتحرك	moved
like	يحب	liked
play	يلعب	played
push	يضغط على	pushed

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
show	يعرض	showed
see	يرى	saw
sell	يبيع	sold
think	يفكر	thought
come	يأتي	came
buy	يشتري	bought
say	يقول	said
choose	يختار	chose



button	زر	what you touch to make a machine work.
drought	جفاف	when there isn't enough rain.
sail	شراع	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move
stall	طاولة عرض (كشك)	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	the long nose of an elephant.

Study the following

1. We need some tomatoes from this stall.

– نحتاج بعض الطماطم من هذا الكشك.

2. The other toys on the stall were amazing.

– كانت اللعب الأخرى في الكشك رائعة.

3. There was an elephant which moved its trunk.

– كان هناك فيل يحرك زلومته.

4. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

– كان هناك قارب ذو شراع مصنوع من قماش جميل.

5. Wael bought some marbles yesterday.

– اشترى وائل بعض البلي أمس.

6. This game is called draughts.

– هذه اللعبة تسمى الداما.

7. We laugh when we play draughts.

– نحن نضحك عندما نلعب الداما.

8. She thought about the toy that she bought.

– فكرت في اللعبة التي إشترتها.

9. A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

– الجفاف يحدث عندما لا يكون هناك ما يكفي من المطر.





Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home. "Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade." "Thanks. Mom," said Ali, He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys. "OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking".

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.

The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant".

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"



1 Read the summary. Choose the correct word a, b, or c:

اقرأ الملخص وأجب عن الأمثلة:

Ali was ❶ ------ ------ with his parents at the ❷ --- - --- --- . He saw a stall that sold ❸ ------------- . A man showed him how a(n) ❹ ------- --- moved. Ali thought the toys were ❺ ------------- . Ali's ❻ ------------ came to see the toys, too. He liked the ❼ --- --------- , so he bought it. He said Ali ❽ ------------- play with it.

1.	a. shopping	b. working	c. buying
2.	a. stall	b. store	c. market
3.	a. wood	b. lemonade	c. toys
4.	a. boat	b. elephant	c. train
5.	a. old	b. amazing	c. small
6.	a. mom	b. brother	c. dad
7.	a. train	b. animal	c. boat
8.	a. could	b. couldn't	c. didn't

Language focus قواعد لغوية

➢ Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:

◉ بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً إليه ing مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	stop	يتوقف	continue	يستكمل	finish	ينهي
hate	يكره	imagine	يتخيل	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب						

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
- I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.

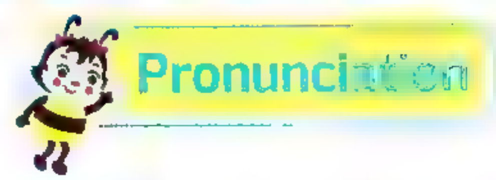
- هنا نلاحظ أننا استخدمنا looking & playing لأن الأفعال enjoy & stop يتبعان بالفعل مضافاً له ing وقس على ذلك باقي الأفعال الأخرى التي ذكرناها بالأعلى.

2 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل بالصيغ الصحيحة للكلمات مما بين القوسين:

1. Amal imagined ---------- (fly) in a plane.
2. Ghada prefers ---------- (play) board games to skipping.
3. We enjoy ---------- (make up) stories for our action figures.
4. My sister stopped ---------- (let) me share her doll's house because I broke it.
5. They finished ---------- (paint) the posters and tidied up.
6. Last night I finished ---------- (to doing) my homework at 8 pm.

Unit 1



- أحيانا ينطق المقطع "gh" كحرف «ف»، ويرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /f/ أما المقطع "ght" ينطق مثل /t/.

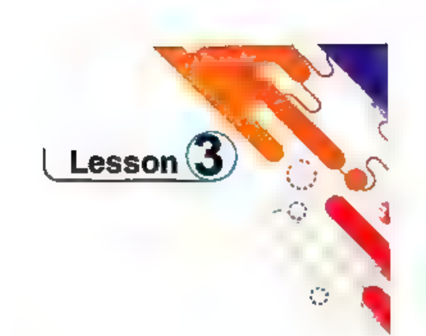
(gh) pronounced as /f/		(ght) pronounced as /t/	
coughed	أسعل	bought	اشترى
draughts	لعبة الداما	brought	أحضر
enough	كاف	daughter	ابنة
laughed	ضحك	drought	جفاف
laughter	الضحك	thought	فكر
rough	خشن		
tough	صعب		

1 Listen. Do you hear the sound /f/ in these words? Circle Y (Yes) or N (No): استمع. هل تسمع صوت (f) في الكلمات القادمة، وضع دائرة حول نعم (Y) أو لا (N).

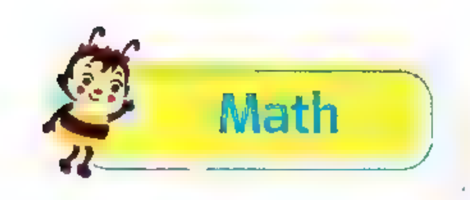
1. laughed	Y / N	2. thought	Y / N
3. bought	Y / N	4. coughed	Y / N
5. drought	Y / N	6. enough	Y / N
7. daughter	Y / N	8. brought	Y / N

2 Listen, read, and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. We laugh when we play draughts.
2. She thought about the toy that she bought.
3. A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

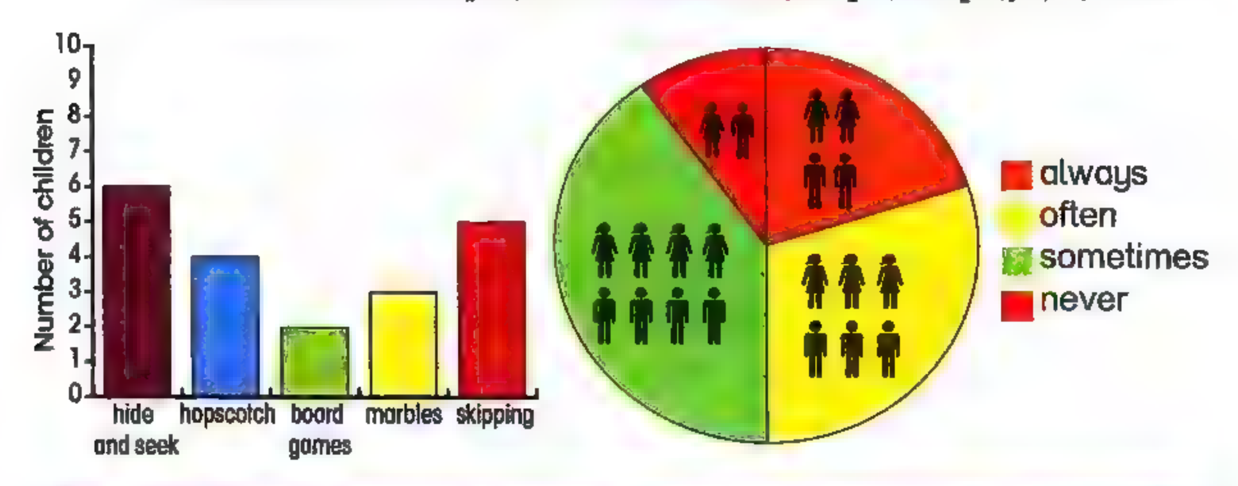


Lesson 3



GRAPHS الرسم البياني

◉ الرسم البياني هو عبارة عن تمثيل للمعلومات أو البيانات في شكل رسومات، بحيث يتم تمثيل البيانات إما من خلال الرسم البياني الشريطي (Bar Graph) أو الرسم البياني الدائري (Pie Chart).



Look at the graphs again and answer the questions:

انظر للرسم البياني وأجب عن الأسئلة :

Bar graph

1. Which group is the biggest? ----------
2. Which group is the smallest? ----------
3. How many children answered the question? ----------

Pie chart

1. Which group is the biggest? ----------
2. Which group is the smallest? ----------
3. What is the total of the numbers? ----------

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a strong piece of cloth that make a boat move.
   a seed b sail c sea d soil
2. Ali was shopping with his parents at the ....
   a market b museum c park d school
3. A drought is when there isn't enough ....
   a salt b rain c sugar d sand
4. A trunk is a long .... of an elephant.
   a leg b tail c nose d mouth
5. The letters "gh" in the word .... aren't pronounced as /f/ sound.
   a coughed b draughts c thought d enough
6. A .... is a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.
   a ball b call c stall d mall

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

train - sit - stall - set - amazing

Eslam and his sister, Nour, were at the market. They saw a (1) .... that sold toys. Eslam loved the train (2) .... and wanted to buy it. A man showed him how a (3) .... moved. Nour bought a doll. They thought their toys were (4) ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. yesterday - bought - Wael - marbles - some.

....

2. draughts - This - called - game - is.

....

3. draughts - We - play - when - laugh - we.

....

4. our - train - playing - We - love - with - set.

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mai enjoys (to spending) ---------- time with her friends.
2. Karma stops (talk) ---------- when the teacher enters the class.
3. My mom finishes (to cook) ---------- dinner at 7 o'clock.
4. Tarek enjoys (listen) ---------- to music.
5. Ahmed hates (to driving) ---------- in busy roads.
6. Younes likes (went) ---------- for walks in the park.
7. He prefers (drink) ---------- tea instead of coffee.
8. They finish (study) ---------- for their exams next week.
9. We imagine (travelled) ---------- the world one day.
10. Does he enjoy (reads) ---------- adventure books?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what is the favorite game in our class ----------------------------
2. we imagined being in a plane over the city ----------------------------

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Marawan about activities at school, your name is Mohamed and your email address is mohamed@gmail.com and your friend's email address is marawan@yahoo.com

مجاب أخر الوحدة

Hide and seek – skipping

New Message

To ---------------------------- Cc Bcc

From ----------------------------

Subject ----------------------------



Lesson 4 A DESCRIPTION OF MY FAVORITE GAME

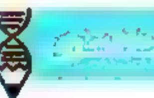




استمع إلى المفردات:

games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب	description	وصف





adventure games	ألعاب المغامرات	Ludo	لعبة لودو
although	بالرغم من	modern	حديث
image	صورة	opinion	رأي
bricks	مكعبات	outside	الخارج
creative	مبدع	problem	مشكلة
different places	أماكن مختلفة	reason	سبب
However	ومع ذلك	too much	أكثر مما ينبغي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
describe	يصف	described
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
share	يشارك	shared
solve	يحل	solved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
beat	يهزم	beat
build	يبني	built
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



an hour a day	ساعة يوميًا	for about an hour	لمدة ساعة تقريبًا
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	kind of	نوع من



Study the following

1. I love playing all kinds of games.

– أحب ممارسة جميع أنواع الألعاب.

2. I play games outside with my friends.

– ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي.

3. We play hopscotch and board games at school.

– نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية في المدرسة.

4. I enjoy playing board games with my sister, but she often beats me.

– أنا أستمتع بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، لكنها غالبًا ما تهزمني.

5. My favorite games are video games.

– ألعابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو.

6. I play for about an hour on the weekend.

– ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

7. You can build cities using different bricks.

– يمكنك بناء مدن باستخدام مكعبات مختلفة.

8. I can be creative and make something new.

– أستطيع أن أكون مبدعًا وأصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

9. I share a new games console with my sister.

– أشارك وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة مع أختي.

10. My sister enjoys playing adventure games.

– تستمتع أختي بلعب ألعاب المغامرة.

11. You can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem.

– يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة.

12. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

– يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا.

13. What's your favorite game?

– ما هي لعبتك المفضلة؟

14. It's a board game called Ludo.

– إنها لعبة لوحية تسمى لودو.

3 Read Belal's description and know how often he plays video games.

اقرأ وصف بلال واعرف كم مرة يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

by Belal

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

أحب ممارسة جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

ألعابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الكمبيوتر. أنا لا ألعبهم كثيرًا، رغم ذلك. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. انها ممتعة! ألعابي المفضلة هي تلك التي أقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة حقًا باستخدام مكعبات مختلفة. حيث بها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب هذه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new **games console**, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

بعض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأتشاركها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ألعاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My favorite games are. ....
   a board games   b video games   c marbles   d hopscotch
2. I play video games for about .... on the weekend.
   a an hour   b two hours   c three hours   d four hours
3. Video games can be .... when you play them too much.
   a great   b good   c a problem   d exciting
4. Video games can be great when you do something that is very .... or exciting.
   a creative   b boring   c bad   d crazy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like playing .... outside.
   a hopscotch   b video games   c board games   d action figures
2. Ludo is a .... game.
   a broad   b bread   c bored   d board
3. My sister always .... when we play board games.
   a bites   b beats   c pets   d seats
4. We use .... to build things.
   a toys   b bricks   c boards   d games

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

video - cities - toys - shares - friends

Rana loves playing many kinds of games with her ① .... and family, including outdoor games and ② .... games. She likes the games where she can build ③ .... using different bricks. She enjoys the images of modern video games and she ④ .... her new game console with her little sister. She knows that video games can be a problem, but she doesn't play them too much.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 8

1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Playing video games is enjoyable and all of the children like playing video games. Video games have their pros and **cons**. On the positive side, video games can improve the ability to solve problems, make new things and to be creative. **They** also make you feel excited to connect with your friends all the time. On the other hand, playing video games too much can affect your health because you keep sitting most of the time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**cons**" refers to ....
   a good things b bad things c enjoying things d exciting things
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" means ....
   a children b problems c video games d friends
3. Video games can affect your ....
   a problem b health c board d money

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the suitable title for this passage?

....

5. What are the pros of playing video games?

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. creative - new - I can - be - and - something - make.

....

2. playing - games - I - kinds - love - all - of.

....

3. sister - console - I share - a new - with - my - games.

....

4. games - playing - sister - adventure - My - enjoys.

....

5. My - games - video - favorite - games - are.

....

6. bricks - build - cities - You - different - can - using.

....



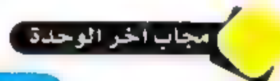


6 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what's your favorite game

----

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



A description of your favorite video game

Guiding questions

1- What is it called?

2- How do you play it?



Review





action figure
مجسم شخصية كرتونية



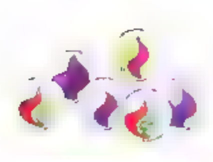
board game
لعبة لوحية



cuddly toy
دمية العناق



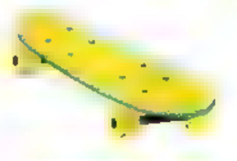
doll's house
بيت الدمية



marbles
بلي



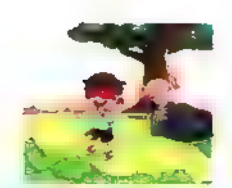
roller skate
حذاء بعجلات



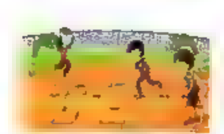
skateboard
لوح تزلج



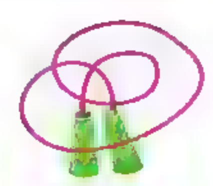
train set
نموذج القطار اللعبة



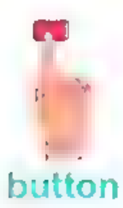
hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية



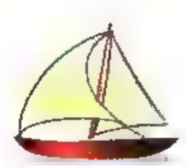
hopscotch
لعبة الحجلة



skipping
لعبة نط الحبل



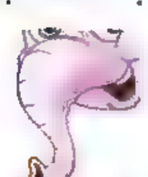
button
زر



sail
شراع



stall
طاولة عرض البضائع (كشك)



trunk
خرطوم الفيل / زلومة

beat	يهزم
make up	يؤلف / يخترع
games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب

have a go	يجرب
description	وصف

Help your child revise Unit 8.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
invent	يخترع	invented
climb	يتسلق	climbed
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
practice	يمارس	practiced
prefer	يفضل	preferred
shop	يتسوق	shopped
move	يتحرك	moved
describe	يصف	described
share	يشارك	shared
solve	يحل	solved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
beat	يهزم	beat
have a go	يجرب	had a go
make up	يخترع	made up
fall	يسقط	fell
seek	يبحث	sought
run	يجري	ran
draw	يرسم	drew
hide	يختفي	hid
show	يعرض	showed
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشتري	bought

Language قواعد لغوية

Intensifiers المعززات اللفظية

◎ نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

◎ يمكننا استخدام (really، very، أو so) لتعزيز الصفة،

- I was really / very good at hiding!
- Some skipping games are so difficult.

◎ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:

- I really liked playing hopscotch.
- I really feel happy when I be with you.

◎ يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية:

- He didn't like skipping at all!
- Sandy isn't beautiful at all.

◎ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة:

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

> **Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:**

◎ بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً اليه ing مثل:

enjoy يستمتع بـ	stop يتوقف	continue يستكمل	finish ينهي
hate يكره	imagine يتخيل	like يحب	prefer يفضل
love يحب			

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
- I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

2

New Message

To	ahmed89@gmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	rana@yahoo.com	
Subject	My favorite toy	

Dear Ahmed,

How are you? I hope you are fine. Thanks for your last email. I am writing this email to tell you about my favorite toy. My favorite toy is my doll's house. I love arranging the furniture and making up different stories for the dolls. It's so much fun! I also enjoy playing with my train set, building bricks and watching the trains go around. What's your favorite toy? I hope you write to me soon.

Love,

Rana

Lesson 3

2

New Message

To	marawan@ yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	mohamed@gmail.com	
Subject	Activities at school	

Dear Marawan,

How are you? I hope you are fine. Thanks for your last email. I am writing this email to tell you about activities at school. At school, we have so much fun during breaks. When we play hide and seek, we run around looking for the best places to hide. Another favorite activity is skipping, where we take turns jumping and trying to learn new skills. It's a great way to stay active and have fun with our friends. Every day, I look forward to these activities!

Love,

Mohamed

Lesson 4

A description of your favorite video game

3 My favorite video game is called "PES." It's a game about football. It's a game where you control the whole team, kicking the ball and scoring goals. You can pick your favorite players, like Messi or Ronaldo. In this game you feel like you have a football playground at home.

Al-Azhar Test on Unit 8

My action figures

4 My action figures are my favorite toys. I loved playing with them. They all have special powers of their own. I made up lots of games for them. They're my best friends. Playing with my action figures always makes my day full of fun adventures.

Test on Unit 8

Playing games

5 Playing games is good for us in lots of different ways. It helps us to be creative, friendly, and problem solvers. Whether it's a board game, a video game, or an outdoor activity. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends. It's a fun way to learn while enjoying time with friends and family.

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

hiding - project - interesting - doing - seek

Younis: What are you ❶ ________________________?

Tarek : I am doing a school ❷ ____________ about toys and games.

Younis: That's really ❸ ________________________!

Tarek : I started by the game of hide and ❹ ____________.

Younis: I like this game because I am good at ❺ ____________.

2 Read and circle the odd one out: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

1	action figure	rollerblades	whiteboard	cuddly toy	______
2	play	find	action	have	______
3	hide and seek	musical chairs	hopscotch	skip	______
4	laughed	enough	bought	coughed	______
5	looking	playing	painting	stop	______

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. At school, we use chalk to make a/an ________ game.
   a) cuddly b) action c) hopscotch d) skipping
2. I think hopscotch is ________ good, but I prefer hide and seek.
   a) quiet b) quite c) at all d) ready
3. The words "rough" and ________ have the /f/ sound.
   a) bought b) daughter c) coughed d) drought
4. Does he enjoy ________ adventure books?
   a) reading b) reads c) read d) to reading
5. I really enjoyed riding my ________ when I was younger.
   a) marble b) bike c) doll's house d) action figure
6. Some skipping games are ________ difficult.
   a) so b) to c) at all d) every
7. I put my old toys in a ________.
   a) book b) box c) fox d) dog
8. They finished ________ the posters and tidied up.
   a) paint b) paints c) painted d) painting

9. A drought is when there isn't enough ....

a air   b place   c rain   d pain

10. I like making up games for my .... figures.

a skate   b doll   c action   d skipping

4 Read the following passage then answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Youssef. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Youssef play with his skateboard? ....

2. When did he get his skateboard? ....

3. Who did he play with? ....

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Youssef's favorite toy was a/an ....

a skateboard   b whiteboard   c doll's house   d action figure

5. Youssef had to wear a .... and knee pads.

a T-shirt   b helmet   c cap   d hat

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. sister - played - Medo - with - marbles - his. ....

2. enjoyed - really - playing - Taha - outside. ....

6 Write a paragraph of Five (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My action figures

toys - powers - made up - day full - fun

....

....

UNIT 8 Activity

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Nour liked ....

a food   b reading   c cooking   d sports

2. Nour really enjoyed playing ... . when she was younger.

a indoors   b inside   c outside   d at home

3. Nour liked playing ....

a tennis   b marbles   c basketball   d volleyball

4. She was quite good at ....

a football   b hide and seek   c tennis   d skipping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My friend always .... me at board games. I never win.

a shops   b thinks   c beats   d says

2. I can go skating on my skateboard or my ....

a train set   b rollerblades   c cuddly toy   d doll's house

3. You can't play ...., if you can't jump.

a hide and seek   b musical chairs   c skipping   d video games

4. I think hide and .... is fun.

a sick   b seat   c sit   d seek

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

ground - game - hide - playing - fun

Playing outside in the park is always so (1) .... We love playing (2) .... and seek between the trees and bushes. Sometimes we draw hopscotch squares on the (3) .... and take turns hopping through them, trying not to stand on the wrong square. Skipping is another favorite (4) ....; we see who can jump the most without falling.





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Salma's birthday party was yesterday. Her brother, Mohamed, surprised her with a soft, cuddly toy that she liked on the shop stall last week. Salma was so happy and thanked her kind brother. As the party ended, she ran to her bedroom, holding the new toy in her arms. She placed it on her bed and started to play with it. From that day on, the cuddly toy became her favorite friend. Salma enjoyed it and **made up** lots of games for it.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma's birthday .... was yesterday.
   a) game b) cake c) party d) food
2. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to ....
   a) Salma b) Mohamed c) the cuddly toy d) the bedroom
3. The underlined word "made up" means ....
   a) tried b) invented c) invited d) enjoyed

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the suitable title for this passage?

....

5. How did her brother surprise her?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. toy - set - My - was - favorite - a train.

....

2. visit -the weekend - grandma - Did - on- you?

....

3. riding - I - my - really - bike - enjoy.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was .... (at all) good at hiding!
2. She loves .... (play) with her toy.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how many children answered the questions

....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Playing games

Guiding questions

1. Is playing games good for us?
2. What do we learn from playing?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

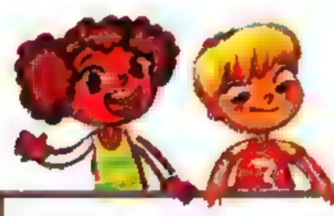
....



Unit 9

What's the story?

ما القصة؟







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen and read about Goha and his stories.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن جحا وقصصه.

2. Understand and discuss what makes a good story.

- يفهم الطالب ويناقش ما يجعل القصة جيدة.

3. Use the past continuous.

- يستخدم الطالب زمن الماضي المستمر.

4. Write the beginning and ending of a story.

- يكتب الطالب بداية ونهاية قصة.

5. Listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة عن ولد وذئب.

6. Use sequencing adverbs.

- يستخدم الطالب ظروف تسلسل الاحداث (فى قصة).

7. Learn how to say words with the sound /w/.

- يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول كلمات بها أصوات الحرف /w/

8. Take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

- يشارك الطالب فى مشروع تعاونى لسرد القصة.







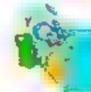


Lesson 1 Goha's stories




استمع إلى المفردات:

narrator	الراوى
moral	درس أخلاقى
setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)
characters	الشخصيات
ending	النهاية



details	التفاصيل
journey	رحلة
stories	قصص
country	دولة
differences	اختلاف
Morocco	دولة المغرب
review	مراجعة نقدية
countryside	الريف
turn	دور
both	كلاهما
Sudan	دولة السودان
Algeria	دولة الجزائر



Adjectives صفات



great	عظيم
right	محق
tired	مُتعب
funny	مضحك
clever	ماهر
different	مختلف
popular	شائع

Phrases and prepositions عبارات مصحوبة بها



in fact	فى الحقيقة
known by	معروفة بـ
Me, too.	وأنا أيضًا.
take turns	يتبادل أدوار
write about	يكتب عن
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم

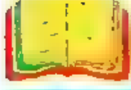
Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
happen	يحدث	happened
pass	يمر	passed
carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
write	يكتب	wrote
ride	يركب	rode
make	يجعل	made
know	يعرف	knew
teach	يدرس	taught
give	يعطى	gave
let	يدع	let



Definitions

Characters	شخصيات	the people or animals in a story.	الناس أو الحيوانات فى قصة.
Ending	النهاية	the last part of a story.	أخر جزء فى القصة.
Setting	المكان	the time and place where a story happens.	الوقت والمكان الذى يحدث في قصة.
Moral	درس اخلاقى	the lesson you learn from a story.	درس تتعلمه من القصة.
Narrator	الراوى	the person who tells the story.	الشخص الذى يحكى القصة.



Study the following

1. **I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories.**
   - اكتب مراجعة نقدية عن واحدة من قصص جحا.
2. **The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey.**
   - القصة عن رجل يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه والحمار.
3. **The man and his son take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.**
   - يتبادل الرجل وابنه الادوار فى ركوب الحمار لان الرحلة طويلة.
4. **In the ending of the story they both carry the donkey.**
   - يحمل كلاهما الحمار فى نهاية القصة.
5. **His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?**
   - قصصه مضحكة وذكية؟ أليس كذلك؟

6 In fact, his stories are popular all over the world.

- فى الحقيقة قصصه منتشرة فى كل انحاء العالم.

7 But he's known by different names. - ولكنه معروف باسماء مختلفة.

8 Are the stories the same in every country? - هل القصص متطابقة فى كل دولة؟

9 There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us.

- يوجد بعض الاختلافات ولكن فى القصص درس أخلاقي يريد جحا أن يعلمنا اياه.

10 That you can't make everyone happy. - وهو انك لا تستطيع اسعاد الجميع.

1 Listen and read. Why do the man and his son carry the donkey?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا الرجل وابنه يحملان الحمار؟


استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Arabic Meaning

١- الوقت والمكان
٢- شخصيات
٣- النهاية
٤- راوى
٥- التفاصيل
٦- شائعة
٧- معروف
٨- درس أخلاقي

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting(1) is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters(2) - the man and his son - take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending(3) of the story, they both carry the donkey!

Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great narrator(4), too. I love the details(5) he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular(6) all over the world. But he's known(7) by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a moral(8) that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?



Lama : That you can't make everyone[9] happy.

Mom : I think Goha is right about[10] that!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

٩- الجميع
١٠- محق بشأن

2 Listen and read again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook.

استمع واقرأ مرة أخرى. ضع (✓) أو (✗). صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك.

1. The setting of the story is a market. F
2. There are three main characters in the story. ☐
3. Goha is known as Jeha in Morocco. ☐
4. Goha's stories are not the same all over the world. ☐
5. Lama and her mom disagree with the moral of the story. ☐

3 Write the words in bold in the dialog next to their meanings.

اكتب الكلمات المحددة فى المحادثة امام معانيها.

1. the people or animals in a story characters
2. the last part of a story ______
3. the time and place where a story happens ______
4. the lesson you learn from a story ______
5. the person who tells the story ______

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians carved pictures to tell stories.

قامت الناس برواية القصص منذ آلاف السنين. نحت المصريون القدامى الصور ليحكوا القصص.

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed goes to the ___________ with his family.
   a town b city c countryside d beach
2. Ahmed's sister ___________ the chickens and goats.
   a eats b feeds c bakes d hates
3. Ahmed's father helps on the ___________ .
   a farm b school c club d park
4. Ahmed's mother bakes ___________ .
   a cakes b bread c lunch d fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. ___________ are the people or animals in a story.
   a Settings b Characters c Morals d Countries
2. The ___________ is a person who tells the story.
   a character b father c narrator d moral
3. The lesson we learn from a story is its ___________.
   a coral b moral c settings d narrator
4. The ending is the ___________ part of a story.
   a third b last c first d second

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

lesson - names - moral - popular - endings

I like reading stories. Goha's stories are very (1) ___________ all over the world.
Goha wanted to teach us a (2) ___________. It's the (3) ___________ of the story.
Goha's stories have some differences, but he's known by different (4) ___________.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. funny - stories - Goha's - are.

----

2. the same - Are - country - stories - every - in?

----

3. everyone - can't - You - happy - make.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

goha is a great narrator

----

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

[illegible]

Guiding questions

1- Where was the setting?

2- What's the moral of the story?

Lesson 2 • A message in a bottle



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

grandparents	الاجداد	a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
message	رسالة	space	الفضاء
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج	by the sea	بجوار البحر
trash	قمامة	better idea	فكرة أفضل
score a goal	يحرز هدف	path	ممشى
text message	رسالة نصية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

[illegible] أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pass	يمر	passed
surf	يتزلج علي الماء	surfed
arrive	يصل	arrived
fold	يطوى	folded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
throw	يرمى	threw
forget	ينسى	forgot
send	يرسل	sent
give	يعطى	gave
come	يأتى	came
ring	يرن	rang



Study the following

1. Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. – عاش أجداد "توم" بجوار البحر.
2. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful. – كان الشاطئ بجانب منزلهم هادئ وجميل.
3. Let's write a message in a bottle. – دعنا نكتب رسالة فى زجاجة.
4. Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. – غسل الجد الزجاجة الزجاجية واعطى توم قلم جاف وقطعة من الورق.
5. Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea. – ذهب توم واجداده إلى الشاطئ ورموا الزجاجة فى البحر.
6. Many years passed, and Tom grew up. – مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم.
7. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. – نسى توم واجداده الرسالة فى الزجاجة.
8. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message. – ثم فى احد الأيام كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده الرسالة.





Listen and read the beginning of a story. استمع واقرأ بداية القصة.





نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Arabic Meaning

١- تزلجوا على الماء
٢- قمامة
٣- يطوي
٤- عنوان

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed[1], and played games on the sand.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash.[2]"

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle." "What's a message in a bottle?"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold[3] the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.

What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address[4] is tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

Language قواعد لغوية

Past continuous الماضي المستمر

1 Usage الاستخدام

١ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر في وقت معين في الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص في الماضي.

٢ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر.



2 Form التكوين

يتكون من:

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + was	+ V + ing	
They / We / You اسم جمع + were		

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.
- They were walking their dog yesterday afternoon.



3 When أداة الربط

يستخدم الماضي المستمر لربط حدثين في الماضي، الحدث المستمر في الماضي المستمر والحدث الثاني المفاجئ في الماضي البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط(when).

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up I was reading a story.

4 Negative النفي

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + wasn't	+ V + ing	
We / You / They اسم جمع + weren't		

- He wasn't riding a bike.
- They weren't doing their homework.



5 Question السؤال

كلمة استفهام + was / were	+ subject + V + ing?	

- What was happening yesterday?
- Where were you yesterday morning?





2 Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل باستخدام زمن الماضى المستمر أو الماضى البسيط للأفعال بين القوسين:

1. Fatima was doing (do) her homework when she got (get) a text message from her friend.
2. Ghada and I .... (play) computer games when her brother .... (arrive) home.
3. I .... (not watch) TV when you .... (call) me.
4. .... you .... (look) at your phone when I .... (see) you in the street?

3 What was happening yesterday? Use the past continuous to describe the pictures.

ماذا كان يحدث بالأمس؟ استخدم الماضى المستمر لوصف الصور.

1 

2 

3 

Hazem watch football match / Egypt score goal	Dad / read newspaper / Lina come	Ayman ride bike/phone ring

Hazem was watching football when Egypt scored a goal.

....

....

4 Read the start of another story. Underline examples of the past continuous and circle examples of the past simple.

اقرأ بداية قصة أخرى. ضع خطأ تحت أمثلة زمن الماضى المستمر ودائرة حول أمثلة الماضى البسيط:

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are .... characters in the story.
   - a two
   - b three
   - c four
   - d five
2. The .... was the setting of the story.
   - a park
   - b beach
   - c school
   - d desert
3. The boy put the message in the .... bottle.
   - a glass
   - b plastic
   - c paper
   - d wood
4. The grandfather sent the .... to the boy.
   - a bottle
   - b message
   - c idea
   - d glass

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

called - message - newspaper - match - riding

Yesterday afternoon was a busy day. I was watching a football ❶ .... when my father came. My mother was reading the ❷ .... when the phone rang. My brother Hisham was ❸ .... his bike. My sister Noha was doing her homework when she got a text ❹ .... from her friend.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. writing - a message - I'm - a bottle - in.

   ....

2. put - it - Let's - trash - in - the.

   ....

3. your - What - favorite - are - things?

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4. surfed - games - They - the sand - on - and - played.

----

5. grandparents - lived - His - the sea - by.

----

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. My dad was .... (sleep) yesterday evening.
2. Kareem was doing his homework .... (what) the phone rang.
3. Dina and her mom .... (was) walking by the sea.
4. I was playing games when my brother .... (arrive).
5. .... (Are) you writing a message when I came?
6. My brother and I .... (was) riding a bike.
7. Where were you .... (go) yesterday morning?
8. Adel .... (isn't) studying English when his teacher came.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

What s a message in a bottle

Lesson 3 The Boy who cried wolf





Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:







sheep	wolf	villager	shepherd
أغنام	ذئب	ساكن القرية	راعي الغنم





Adjectives

lonely	وحيد
bored	شاعر بالملل
sorry	ندمان
alone	بمفرده
angry	غاضب



main character	شخصية رئيسية
untrue stories	قصص غير حقيقية
Once	ذات مرة
hill	تل
tools	أدوات
joke	مزحة / نكتة
suddenly	فجأة
village	قرية
while	أثناء
field	حقل
truth	حقيقة

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



look after	يعتني بـ
have fun	يستمتع
busy working	مشغول في العمل
worry about	قلق بشأن
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
annoy	يضايق / يزعج	annoyed
believe	يصدق	believed
save	ينقذ	saved
waste	يضيع	wasted
rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصيح	shouted
kill	يقتل	killed
appear	يظهر	appeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
do	يفعل	did
say	يقول	said
lie	يرقد	lay

Study the following

1. Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village.
   – يحكى أن كان هناك ولد يدعى بيتر وكان يعيش فى قرية.
2. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep.
   – كان يعمل وحيدا كراعى للغنم حيث يعتنى بالأغنام.
3. Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep.
   – كان بيتر نائم على الحشائش ويشاهد اغنامه.
4. Peter felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun.
   – كان بيتر يشعر بالوحدة والملل فقرر أن يحصل على بعض من المتعة.
5. He shouted "Wolf" and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
   – لقد صرخ ذئب وجاء سكان القرية ليساعدوه وينقذوا الغنم.
6. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep.
   – كان القرويون منشغلين فى العمل لكنهم كانوا قلقين على أغنام بيتر.
7. He said there was no wolf and it was a joke. – لقد قال لهم أنه لايوجد ذئب وإنها نكتة.
8. The villagers were angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.
   – لقد غضب سكان القرية وقالوا له لايجب أن يضيع أوقاتهم.
9. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.
   – أخيرًا، جاء الذئب الحقيقى. واكل الغنم كان بيتر ندمان جدًا.

Language focus ملاحظات لغوية

Adverbs of sequencing ظروف تسلسل الاحداث

First	→	Next	→	Then	→	After that	→	Finally
أولا		فيما بعد		ثم		بعد ذلك		أخيراً

◉ تستخدم ظروف تسلسل الاحداث لتوضيح ترتيب الاحداث فى قصة.

1 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:





Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd(1) looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested(2) while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

One day, Peter was lying(3) on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely(4) and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers(5) in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke(6)! he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

Then. Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real(7) wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him. but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood(8) why no one came, and he was very sorry(9).

١- راعى غنم
٢- استراح
٣- مستلقى
٤- شعر بالوحدة
٥- قرويون
٦- مزحة
٧- حقيقى
٨- فهم
٩- ندمان

2 Number the story in the correct order. Then complete with the adverbs of sequencing from the box.

رقم القصة بالترتيب الصحيح. ثم أكمل بظروف تسلسل الأحداث من القائمة.

After that	Finally	First	Next	Then

The Boy Who Cried Wolf

______________, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. ☐

______________, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry. ☐

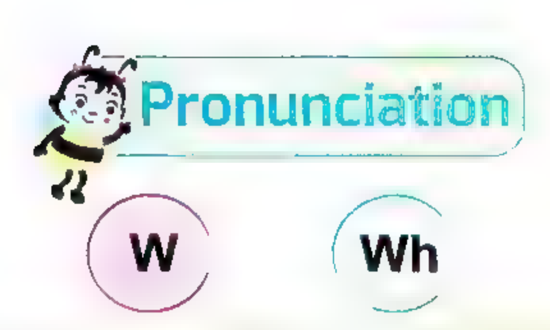
______________, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. ☐

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. 1

e. ______________, Peter did it again. ☐

______________, villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. ☐

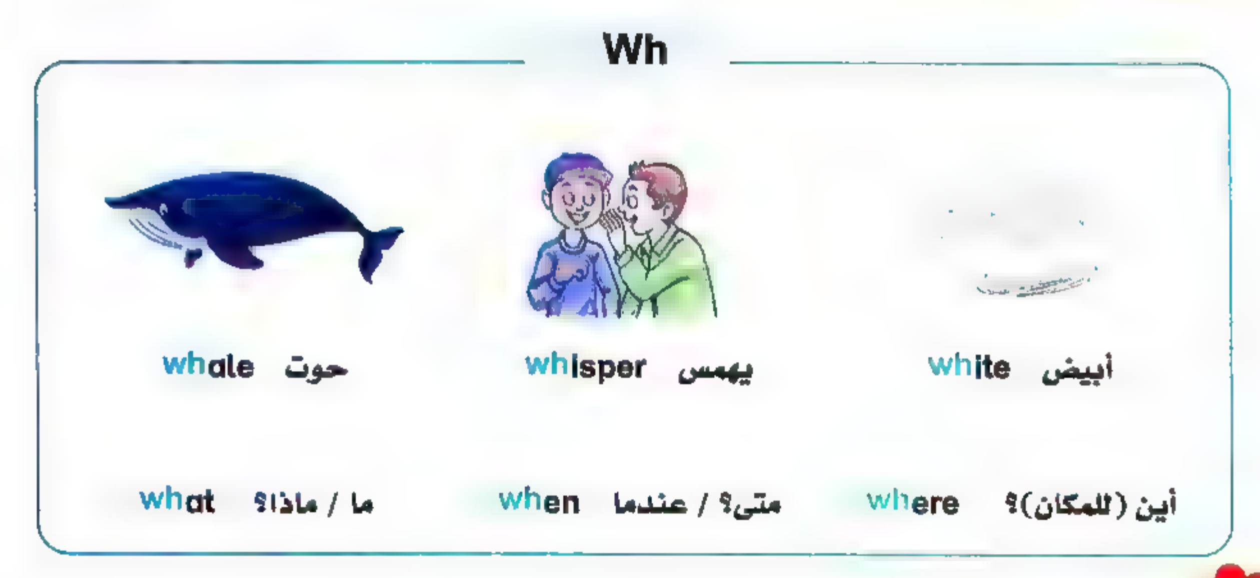




١ - ينطق حرف /w/ مثل نطق حرف (وَ) فى اللغة العربية مع ضم الشفتين:



٢ - لاحظ فى نطق حرف /wh/ أن حرف h صامت (لا ينطق) حيث أن "wh" ينطق من حرف "w":



Unit 9

The stressed syllable
المقطع المشدد (فى النطق)

١- يقصد بـ stressed syllable هو المقطع المشدد فى النطق فى الكلمة وينطق هذا المقطع بصوت اعلى واوضح من باقى المقاطع.

٢- اذا كانت الكلمة مكونة من مقطع واحد يتم التشديد على هذا المقطع مثل:

happy - like - send

٣- إذا احتوت الكلمة علي "prefix" البادئة فأن المقطع المشدد يكون فى الكلمة الاساسية وليس البادئة.

unhappy	سعيد	dislike	يكره	resend	يعيد إرسال
untidy	غيرمرتب	disagree	لايوافق	incorrect	غيرصحيح
replay	يرد	indoors	بالداخل		

1 Complete the words with w or wh. Listen, check and repeat.
أكمل الكلمات بحرف w أو wh . أستمع وتأكد وردد:

1. ____ en
2. ____ alk
3. ____ at
4. ____ ave
5. ____ ere
6. ____ est

2 Listen, read, and repeat the sentences
أستمع واقرأ وردد الجمل:

1. A white whale went west.
2. A wolf whispered, "What? When?"

3 Look, read, and listen. Then underline the stressed syllable in the words in bold:
انظر واقرأ ثم استمع. ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات المحددة:

1

Let's **resend** the message.

2

Why do you **dislike** surfing?

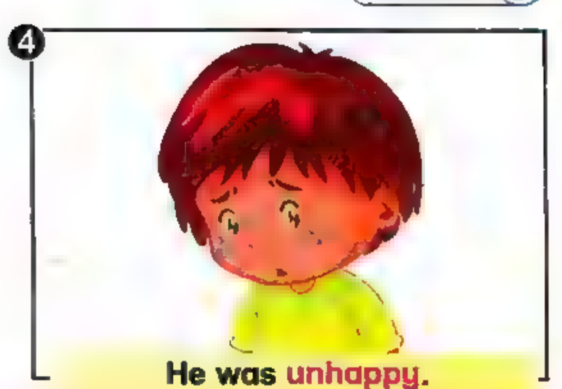


3



I like playing indoors.

4



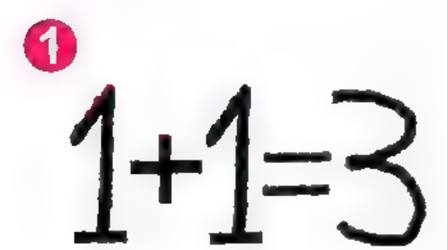
He was unhappy.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Say them using the correct stress. Then listen and check:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات فى القائمة. قل الكلمات باستخدام التشديد فى النطق الصحيح. ثم استمع وتأكد:

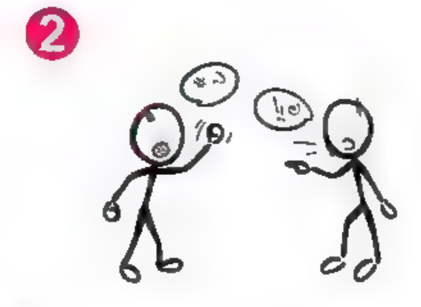
replay	incorrect	disagree	untidy

1



This answer is incorrect

2



Why do you ________________ with him?

3



The room is ________________.

4



Please ________________ the video.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Please .... the video again.
   a disagree b replay c dislike d repaint
2. This answer is ....
   a unhappy b indoors c incorrect d untidy
3. The shepherd is the person who looks after the ....
   a whales b wolf c sheep d villagers
4. The villagers were angry because the boy .... them.
   a annoyed b saved c wasted d believed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

believe - sorry - tell - funny - moral

Yesterday, I read the story of the boy and the wolf. I learnt that I shouldn't ❶ .... untrue stories. People won't ❷ .... me. When I'm in a problem, no one will help me. The ❸ .... of the story is useful. The boy felt ❹ .... at the end because the wolf ate his sheep because the villagers didn't help him.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. decided - some - Peter - fun - to have.

....

2. do - surfing - like - Why - you?

....

3. indoors - playing - I - like.

....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Were you .... (do) your homework at nine yesterday?

2. The wolf came and .... (eats) the sheep.

3. She was studying when the lights.............. (go) out.

5 Punctuate the following:

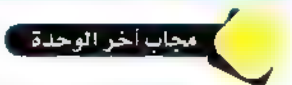
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

don't tell untrue stories

....

6 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



To your friend Hoda to tell her about the story of the shepherd and the villagers. Your name is Laila and your email address is laila15@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hoda25@gmail.com.

The boy who cried wolf

Guiding questions

1- What did the boy do to have fun?

2- Why were the villagers angry?

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4

Writing: The ending of a story




استمع إلى المفردات:

the coast	الساحل	France	فرنسا
sailing	الأبحار	Biarritz	بياريتز(بلدة فى فرنسا)
excited	متحمس	reply	رد
long way	طريق طويل	How far?	كم البعد؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
reply	يرد	replied
decide	يقرر	decided

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found
forget	ينسى	forgot



Study the following

1. Many years passed and Tom grew up. – مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم.
2. We have a reply to our message in a bottle. – لدينا رد على رسالتنا فى زجاجة.
3. A man in France found the message. – وجدت رجل فى فرنسا الرسالة.
4. This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. – هذا يعنى بانها سافرت أكثر من ٦٠٠ كيلو متر.
5. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day. – مرحبا بك أن تأتى وتزورنى في فرنسا يوم ما.
6. But it's a long way, so let's go by plane! – لكنه طريق طويل، لذلك دعنا نسافر بالطائرة.





Read this ending of the story on page 38. What does Tom decide to do?

اقرأ نهاية القصة فى صفحة ٣٨. ماذا يقرر توم أن يفعل؟

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot(1) about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message(2).

[illegible]

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply(3)."



From: Hugo
To: Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz(4), France. I live on the coast and I love sailing(5) my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water - your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"

Later(6) that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?"

"I'm writing to Hugo."

"Why, are you going to visit him?"

"You and I are both going to visit him!"

"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

Arabic Meaning

١- نسى
٢- رسالة
٣- رد
٤- مدينة بياريتز
٥- الإبحار
٦- لاحقًا



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. We enjoy .... stories.

a playing b buying c reading d sending

2. The .... teach us the moral.

a settings b narrators c endings d events

3. Good stories should have ....

a endings b settings c narrators d messages

4. The endings tell us what the characters feel at the .... of the story.

a beginning b first c end d middle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Many years .... and Tom grew up.

a walked b passed c traveled d sent

2. It's a long way, so let's go by ....

a bike b foot c plane d boat

3. How .... had the message in a bottle traveled?

a big b far c tall d many

4. I live on the ...., so I can see the sea.

a farm b coast c village d river



3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sailing - my - I - boat - love.

----

2. replies - the - Who - message - to?

----

3. found - A man - France - the message - in.

----

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. I was .... (sail) when, I found the message.

2. Last week, Tom .... (goes) to his grandparents' house.

3. What .... (is) your favorite things?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how does tom feel at the end?



Key vocabulary

setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)
characters	الشخصيات
ending	النهاية
narrator	الراوى
moral	أخلاقى
grandparents	الاجداد
message	رسالة
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج
trash	قمامة
score a goal	يحرز هدف
text message	رسالة نصية
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
space	الفضاء

by the sea	بجوار البحر
better idea	فكرة أفضل
sheep	أغنام
wolf	ذئب
villager	ساكن القرية
shepherd	راعى الغنم
the coast	الساحل
sailing	الابحار
excited	متحمس
long way	طريق طويل
reply	رد
How far?	كم يبعد؟



Adjectives صفات

funny	مضحك
clever	ماهر / ذكى
different	مختلف
popular	شائع
great	عظيم

right	على حق
tired	متعب
excited	متحمس
bored	شاعر بالملل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
happen	يحدث	happened
carry	يحمل	carried
pass	يمر	passed
surf	يتزلج علي الماء	surfed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
know	يعرف	knew
teach	يدرس	taught
give	يعطى	gave
let	يدع	let
throw	يرمى	threw

Help your child revise Unit 9. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.

arrive	يصل	arrived	forget	ينسى	forgot
reply	يرد	replied	send	يرسل	sent
decide	يقرر	decided	feel	يشعر	felt
			write	يكتب	wrote
			ride	يركب	rode



Language — قواعد لغوية

[illegible]



① Usage الاستخدام

١ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر في وقت معين في الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص.
٢ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر.



② Form التكوين

يتكون من:

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + was } + V + ing
They / We / You اسم جمع + were } + V + ing

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.
- They were walking their dog yesterday afternoon.



③ When أداة الربط

يستخدم الماضي المستمر لربط حدثين في الماضي، الحدث المستمر في الماضي المستمر والحدث الثاني المفاجئ في الماضي البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط(when).

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up I was reading a story.



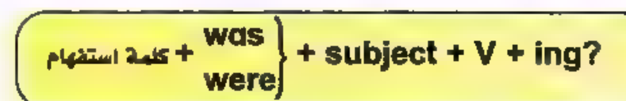
④ Negative النفي

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + wasn't } + V + ing
We / You / They اسم جمع + weren't } + V + ing

- He wasn't riding a bike.
- They weren't doing their homework.



⑤ Question السؤال



كلمة استفهام + was / were + subject + V + ing?

- What was happening yesterday?
- Where were you yesterday morning?



Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

[illegible]

Lesson 1

Gona's story about the donkey

(1) One day, a man went to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting was the countryside. The man and his son took turns to ride the donkey because it was a long journey. When the man rode the donkey, the people said he should let his son. When his son rode the donkey, people said he should let his father ride the donkey. The moral lesson is that you can't make everyone happy.

Lesson 2

(2) **New Message**

To hoda25@gmail.com **Cc Bcc**

From laila15@yahoo.com

Subject The boy who cried wolf

Dear Hoda.

How are you? I'd like to tell you about the story I read. Yesterday, I went to the library. I read a story about the boy who tells untrue stories. The boy told the villagers that a wolf came and wanted to eat the sheep. The villagers were angry and didn't believe the boy. There, one day a real wolf came and ate the sheep. The boy felt sorry. See you soon.

Yours,

Laila

Al-Azhar Exercises

The boy who cried wolf

(3) Once there was a boy who worked as a shepherd. First he shouted "There is a wolf". The villagers ran to save him. He didn't tell the truth and the real wolf came and killed his sheep. He believes that he should tell the truth.

Activity Unit 9

Your favorite story

(4) My favorite story was about the boy and his granddad who wrote a message in a glass bottle and threw it in the sea. After many years, his granddad found a reply to their message from a man in France. The boy decided to visit the man with his granddad. They went by plane.



1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

happened - was - when - walking - weather

Amr : What were you doing yesterday afternoon?

Nabil : I was ① ______________________________ on the beach.

Amr : What was the ② ______________________________ like?

Nabil : It was very sunny.

Amr : Who ③ ______________________________ with you?

Nabil : My brother Adham.

Amr : What ④ ______________________________ after that?

Nabil : We were sitting on the beach ⑤ ____________ we saw my uncle's boat.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1 woman	wolf	sheep	donkey	-----
2 what	where	whisper	when	-----
3 bored	bottle	sorry	excited	-----
4 then	first	next	moral	-----
5 feel	sent	found	saw	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last weekend, Samy ____________ to his granddad.

ⓐ go ⓑ going ⓒ went ⓓ goes

2. The ____________ of the story is friends are important.

ⓐ moral ⓑ setting ⓒ narrator ⓓ character

3. He was listening to music ____________ the man shouted.

ⓐ where ⓑ when ⓒ what ⓓ why

4. My friend's answers are ____________.

ⓐ unhappy ⓑ incorrect ⓒ untidy ⓓ indoors

5. The ______________ is France in 1998.

(a) moral (b) character (c) setting (d) weather

6. Who ______________ to your message?

(a) replies (b) travels (c) visits (d) comes

7. What ______________ you doing yesterday morning?

(a) were (b) are (c) can (d) do

8. We were ______________ English when the teacher came.

(a) studies (b) studied (c) studying (d) study

9. The villagers came to ______________ the sheep from the wolf.

(a) save (b) waste (c) annoy (d) tell

10. She was sleeping when her friend ______________ her.

(a) calling (b) calls (c) called (d) call

C Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Sending messages to friends is important in our life. But, one day Tom and his granddad sent a message to someone they did not know. That was a strange thing. They put a piece of paper in a glass bottle and threw it in the sea. A man in France found the message and replied to it. He wrote in his message about his favorite things. Tom was excited and he decided to travel to France by plane because the way was so long.

A. Answer the following questions

1. What was strange about Tom's message?

____

2. Why did Tom travel to France by plane?

____

3. Where did Tom put his message?

____

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tom threw the bottle in ______________ .

(a) the park (b) France

(c) the sea (d) his granddad's house

5. Tom was ____________ and decided to travel to France.

a bored   b excited   c angry   d sorry

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. stories - It's - to - fun - tell.

----

2. you - want - to read - Do - a story?

----

3. is - Where - your - the setting - story - of?

----

4. make - laugh - Goha's - us - stories.

----

5. got - I - a message - Adel - from.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The boy who cried wolf

Guiding words:

shepherd - wolf - villagers - sheep - believe

ON UNIT 9 Activity



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We go to grandpa's farm on __________ holidays.

   a winter b summer c spring d fall

2. When we are bored, we listen to __________ .

   a songs b jokes c stories d films

3. There are a lot of stories in my grandpa's __________ .

   a bedroom b living room c fields d balcony

4. I always __________ my grandpa's stories.

   a forget b remember c buy d sell

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live on the __________ and I love sailing.

   a coast b market c space d moon

2. The __________ is the last part of a story.

   a setting b character c narrator d ending

3. __________ is the moral of the story?

   a Why b When c What d Who

4. The __________ is the person who tells you the story.

   a narrator b shepherd c traveler d villager





3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل:

setting - funny - narrator - make - engry

We read stories to learn the moral at the ending of the story. The characters and the ❶ ____________ show us the events. The ❷ ____________ is also important. Stories also ❸ ____________ us happy and laugh a lot. For example, Goha's stories are both ❹ ____________ and clever.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday evening, I was going back from my club. Suddenly it rained a lot and the lights went out. I was scared because the bus driver asked me to get off the bus. He was very tired and he couldn't drive the bus. I walked lonely in the street. An old man behind a tree stopped me and told me where I was going, but I couldn't reply. There were many black dogs shouting. I was running when I met my father. Then, I felt happy. My father took my in his car. I went back home with my wet clothes. This is my story. "The day I never forgot.".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The narrator went back home with his ____________ clothes.

   a dirty　　b wet　　c clean　　d untidy

2. The narrator saw black ____________ shouting.

   a wolves　　b donkeys　　c dogs　　d cats

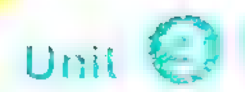
3. The narrator went home in his father's ____________ .

   a bus　　b car　　c plane　　d bike

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why was the narrator scared? ______________________________

5. Who did the narrator meet behind a tree? ______________________________



5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. doing - What - were - you?

---

2. the - Let's - resend - message.

---

3. watching - Hany - a football - is - match.

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. What .... (is) the weather like yesterday?

2. It was .... (rained) at nine yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

which beach were you on

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- Who are the main characters in the story?

2- What's the moral of the story?

Review 3

Listening and Reading

Playing in the school yard

One day, Fares and Ramy were playing hopscotch in the school yard. They were drawing squares using different colored chalk when their friend Magdy came to talk to them.

"What are you playing?" asked Magdy.

"It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?"

"How do you play it?" asked Magdy.

"It's very easy," said Ramy. "First, you throw this rock onto the squares. Next, you see which square it is in. Then you hop to the end of the squares and back, but you have to jump over the square with your rock."

"Great! I'd love to have a go!" said Magdy.

Home Archive Contact Pages

Our museum visit

By Dalia

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.





Listen and look at the pictures:





What's your favorite story?



Reader A: Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" Said Nadia "Last time I came here I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her!"



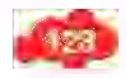
Reader B: Last summer. I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!



Reader C: One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, the felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!



Reader D: When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter...



General Revision on Units 7, 8 & 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٧ - ٨ - ٩

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 7)

clay	صلصال
glass	زجاج
gold	ذهب
granite	حجر جرانيت
paper	ورق
papyrus	ورق البردى
baboon	قرد البابون
crocodile	تمساح
falcon	صقر
hippo	فرس النهر
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
monkey	قرد
snake	ثعبان
rat(s)	فأر كبير (فئران)
mouse (mice)	فأر (فئران)
artifacts	قطع اثرية
stone	حجر
metal	معدن
silver	فضة
durable	صلب / قوى التحمل
fascinating	مبهر / خلاب
weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	أدوات / عدد
iron	حديد

(Unit 8)

action figure	مجسم شخصية كرتونية
board game	لعبة لوحية
cuddly toy	دمية العناق
doll's house	بيت الدمية
marbles	بلي
rollerblades	حذاء بعجلات
skateboard	لوح تزلج
train set	نموذج القطار اللعبة
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية
hopscotch	لعبة الحجلة
skipping	لعبة نط الحبل
button	زر
sail	شراع
stall	طاولة عرض البضائع (كشك)
trunk	زلومة / خرطوم الفيل
beat	يهزم
make up	يخترع / يؤلف
games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب
have a go	يجرب
description	وصف



Revision 3

(Unit 9)

setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)	score a goal	يحرز هدف
characters	الشخصيات	text message	رسالة نصية
ending	النهاية	a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
narrator	الراوى	space	الفضاء
by the sea	بجوار البحر	villager	ساكن القرية
better idea	فكرة أفضل	shepherd	راعى الغنم
sheep	أغنام	the coast	الساحل
wolf	ذئب	sailing	الابحار
moral	أخلاقى	excited	متحمس
grandparents	الاجداد	long way	طريق طويل
message	رسالة	reply	رد
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج	How far?	كم يبعد؟
trash	قمامة		

Adjectives



(Unit 7)

free	حُر / خالى من	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
dangerous	خطير	popular / common	منتشر / شائع
difficult	صعب	important	مهم
harder	اكثر صلابة	rarer	اكثر ندرة
different	مختلف		

(Unit 9)

funny	مضحك	right	على حق
clever	ذكى / ماهر	tired	متعب
different	مختلف	excited	متحمس
popular	شائع	bored	شاعر بالملل
great	عظيم		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				[illegible]			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
(Unit 7)							
preserve	يحفظ / يصون	preserved		know	يعرف	knew	
adore	يعشق	adored		am / is	يكون	was	
mummify	يحنط	mummified		are	يكونوا	were	
believe	يعتقد	believed		become	يصبح	became	
produce	ينتج	produced		teach	يعلم	taught	
trade	يتاجر	traded		grow up	يكبر	grew up	
hunt	يصيد	hunted		sell	يبيع	sold	
melt	يذوب / ينصهر	melted		buy	يشترى	bought	
form	يشكل	formed					
(Unit 8)							
invent	يخترع	invented		beat	يهزم	beat	
move	يتحرك	moved		have a go	يجرب	had a go	
describe	يصف	described		make up	يخترع	made up	
share	يشارك	shared		seek	يبحث	sought	
solve	يحل	solved		hide	يختفي	hid	
				show	يعرض	showed	
(Unit 9)							
happen	يحدث	happened		give	يعطي	gave	
surf	يتزلج على الماء	surfed		let	يدع	let	
reply	يرد	replied		throw	يرمى	threw	
decide	يقرر	decided		forget	ينسى	forgot	
				send	يرسل	sent	

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

(Unit 7)

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved pets.

Subject (فاعل) + **verb** (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

Revision 3

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا : الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied :

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط :

- love → love(d) dance → dance(d)
- need → needed study → studied - stop → stopped

ثانيا : الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- keep → kept become → became

Negative النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

- Mice didn't eat grains.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

◉

Verb to be in the past	فعل يكون في الماضي
I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt..

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were):

- Adam wasn't at school yesterday. - They were happy last week.

(Unit 8)

2 Intensifiers المعززات اللفظية

◉ نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

◉ يمكننا استخدام (really ،very ،so أو) لتعزيز الصفة :

- I was really / very good at hiding! - Some skipping games are so difficult.

◉ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:

- I really liked playing hopscotch. - I really feel happy when I be with you.

◉يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية:

- He didn't like skipping at all!
- Sandy isn't beautiful at all.

◉يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة:

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

➤ **Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:**

◉بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً اليه ing مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	stop	يتوقف	continue	يستكمل	finish	ينهي
hate	يكره	imagine	يتخيل	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب						

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.

(Unit 9)

3 Past continuous الماضي المستمر

١ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر فى وقت معين فى الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص.

٢- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

◉يتكون من:

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + was
They / We / You اسم جمع + were } **+ V + ing**

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.

◉يستخدم الماضى المستمر لربط حدثين فى الماضى، الحدث المستمر فى الماضى المستمر والحدث الثانى المفاجئ فى الماضى البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط(when).

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up I was reading a story.

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد + wasn't
We / You / They اسم جمع + weren't } **+ V + ing**

- He wasn't riding a bike.

كلمة استفهام + was / were + subject + V + ing?

- What was happening yesterday?

Test on Units (7 - 8 & 9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians kept cats as ....

a humans b pests c pets d insects

2. Cats kept the houses free from ....

a lions b mice c dogs d snakes

3. Ancient Egyptians mummfied cats and kept them in ....

a rooms b pyramids c tombs d towers

4. Ancient Egyptians .... cats because they believed in the afterlife.

a mummfied b bathed c fed d killed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm very good at .... up stories.

a making b practicing c skipping d riding

2. I .... to my cousin's message last Friday.

a started b watched c used d replied

3. .... was common metal in Ancient Egypt.

a Wood b Iron c Plastic d Paper

4. Do you like playing with a train .... ?

a seek b set c sick d sit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل:

skateboard - beard - cuddly - marbles - board

I remember my box of old toys when I was a child. I still put it under my bed. I always broke my toys, but my sister kept her toys new. My toys were ❶ .... games, action figures and ❷ .... I didn't play with ❸ .... dolls but my sister had a doll's house. There was also a train set. I liked going outside in the park to ride my ❹ ....





4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In our town, we have a big park. It has got lots of trees, flowers, grass and benches. There are places for playing tennis and volleyball. There's also a small restaurant and a pond for small boats and a very small zoo with few animals in it.

I like watching monkeys. They are my favorite. I buy nuts and give **them** to the zoo keeper. I mustn't feed them. They may hurt my arms and hands. They look funny when they make **amazing** tricks.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....

   a benches b nuts c monkeys d tricks

2. The word "**amazing**" means ....

   a important b common c easy d wonderful

3. In the town, there's a .... for small boats.

   a zoo b beach c pond d river

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the first paragraph into two sentences.

   ----

5. Why mustn't you feed the monkeys?

   ----

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. game - your - What - favorite - is?

   ----

2. popular - stories - very - Goha's - are.

   ----

3. made - of - Is - mask - this - gold?



Revision 3

G Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda didn't ____________ (broke) her toys.
2. Samy was ____________ (shop) yesterday morning.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i played marbles with my brother

Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Papyrus in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

1- What's the papyrus?

2- Why did Ancient Egyptians need papyrus?





Theme 4 Myself and others

Unit 10

Free as a bird

طليق (حُر) كالطائر

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
   يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحث ويكتب عن أمثال عن طائر أو حيوان.
2. Listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
   يستمع الطالب ويفهم عرض تقديمي عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.
3. Read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
   يقرأ الطالب ويتعلم عن السياحة البيئية والحياة البرية.
4. Use must / mustn't to talk about something we have to do.
   يستخدم الطالب must / mustn't ليتحدث عن شيء يجب أن نفعله.
5. Use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
   يستخدم الطالب الحالة الشرطية الأولى ليتحدث عن اشياء من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.
6. Read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
   يقرأ الطالب اعلانات لاجازات السياحة البيئية في مصر.
7. Read and learn about bird migration. يقرأ الطالب ويتعلم عن هجرة الطيور.
8. Say words with two or three syllables.
   يقول الطالب كلمات مكونه من مقطعين صوتيين أو ثلاثة.
9. Read and write a blog about animal habitats.
   يقرأ الطالب ويكتب مدونة الكترونية عن بيئات الحيوانات.
10. Create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.
   ينشئ الطالب كتيب معلومات عن دلتا نهر النيل.



Birds of a feather




استمع إلى المفردات:

Adjectives  صفات

sensible	عاقل / حكيم / منطقي
strange	غريب
careful	حريص
similar	مشابه / متشابه
successful	ناجح
real	حقيقي / واقعي

Other words 

proverb	مثل / قول مأثور
scary	مخيف
well-known	معروف - مشهور
plan	خطة
group	مجموعة
the same	نفس الشيء
fine	جميل - جذاب
flock together	يطيرون سويا
nest	عش
eagle	نسر
ostrich	نعامة
hummingbird	طائر طنان
description	وصف
early	باكرا
exact	دقيق
meaning	معنى
scientific fact	حقيقة علمية
generally	عموما
feathers	ريش
worm	دودة

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
tell	يخبر	told
fly	يطير	flew
mean	يعني	meant
build	يبني	built
think	يعتقد \ يفكر	thought
catch	يصطاد	caught
fall	يسقط	fell

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
hatch	يفقس	hatched
try	يحاول	tried
dare	يجرؤ	dared
count	يعد	counted
mention	يذكر - يشير إلى	mentioned
flock	يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked
succeed	ينجح	succeeded






Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

get the idea	يفهم - يدرك الفكرة	as well as	بالاضافة الى
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	make plans	يخطط
try hard	يبذل قصارى جهده	the first to	اول من يفعل
How about + (v.ing \ n)?	ماذا عن؟	look the same	تبدو متشابهه



Definitions التعريفات

proverb	مثل	- a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. - has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.
sensible	معقول/حكيم	if something is sensible, it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
successful	ناجح	someone who tries to do something, and does it.
careful	حريص	a person who tries hard not to make mistakes.
similar	متشابه	two things that might look the same or do the same things.
real	حقيقي	something that happens and is true.

Proverbs أمثال

Don't count your chickens before they hatch.

لا تعول على شيء جيد قبل حدوثه. (لا تفرح بالشيء قبل اكتماله)

The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly.

يفوز باللذة كل مغامر.

Birds of a feather flock together.

الطيور على أشكالها تقع.

It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds.

لا تحكم على الكتاب من غلافه.

The early bird catches the worm.

البركة في البكور.

Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun.

العين لا تعلو على الحاجب.

Singing birds don't build nests.

الأفعال أعلى صوتًا من الأقوال.



Study the following

1. Proverbs have more than one meaning.

– الامثال لها اكثر من معنى.

2. To be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

– لكي تكون ناجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يفعل شيئًا ما.

3. Similar people like doing the same things.

– الاشخاص المتشابهون يحبون فعل نفس الأشياء.

4. You don't make too many plans before something is real.

– لا تحتاج أن تضع خطط كثيرة جدا قبل أن تتأكد من حقيقة الشيء.

5. You are getting the idea!

– لقد فهمت الفكرة.

6. A successful person tries hard not to make mistakes.

– يفعل الشخص الناجح ما في وسعه لكي لا يرتكب أخطاء.

1 Read the proverb. Then choose the correct answer a, b, or c:

اقرأ المثل ثم اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

Proverb: The early bird catches the worm.

1. A proverb is
   a. a description of an animal. ☐
   b. a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. ☐
   c. a scientific fact. ☐
2. A proverb
   a. means exactly what it says. ☐
   b. has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. ☐



2 **Listen and read the dialog. Who suggests meanings for the proverbs: Malak, Injy, or both?** استمع واقرأ المحادثة. من يقترح معاني للأمثال : ملك ام انجي ام كلتاهما؟

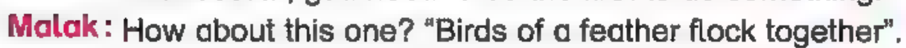


استمع إلى النص: 

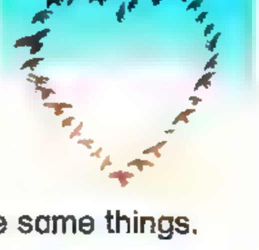


Malak: Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

Injy: Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be **successful**, you need to be the first to do something.



Malak: How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".



Injy: If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have **similar** feathers.

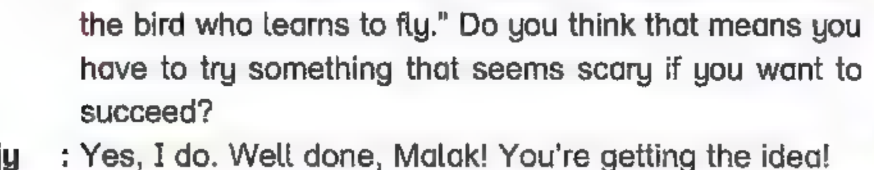
Malak: You mean they all look the same?

Injy: Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

Malak: Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

Injy: Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being **careful** before you know something will happen.

Malak: So you don't make too many plans before something is **real**. That's **sensible**. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?



Injy: Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. It is about 5.5 cm long.

أكبر طائر في العالم هو النعام، يمكن أن يصل طوله حوالي ٢١٠ سم، يمكنه الركض بسرعة ولكنه لا يستطيع الطيران. أصغر الطيور هو طائر النحل الطنان حيث يبلغ طوله حوالي ٥.٥ سم.



Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed has a __________ in Aswan.
   a house b farm c school d hospital
2. The farm is __________ .
   a long b small c new d big
3. He grows __________ there.
   a mangoes b figs c onions d guavas
4. He has many different types of __________ .
   a potatoes b trees c mangoes d animals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The early bird __________ the worm.
   a tries b thinks c grows d catches
2. Mr Badr is a __________ teacher. He always tries hard.
   a bad b successful c tall d long
3. Birds of a feather __________ together.
   a plant b flock c hatch d kill
4. All birds have __________ feathers.
   a careful b early c successful d similar
5. A __________ person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a lazy b careless c careful d bad
6. If something is __________, it happens and is true.
   a real b successful c funny d careful

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

long - ostrich - hummingbird - leaves - bird

The biggest bird in the world is the ❶ .... Ostriches can reach speeds of over 70km per hour. It eats roots, ❷ ...., flowers and seeds. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee ❸ .... It is very small bird. It is about 5.5 cm ❹ ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the first - need - to do - You - something - to be.

   ....

2. chickens - Don't - they - your - before - hatch - count.

   ....

3. hard - person - mistakes - A successful - not to - tries - make.

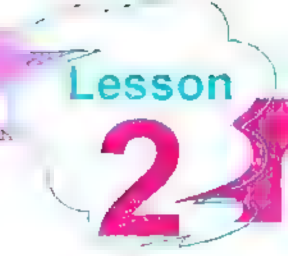
   ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

you re getting that great idea.

....



Part: 1 Eco-tourism in Egypt





استمع إلى المفردات:

sustainable	مستدام – صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة
ideal	مثالي – نموذجي
respect	يحترم

Other words



Eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
tourist	سائح
tour	جولة سياحية
country	دولة
historical places	أماكن تاريخية
store	متجر
migrating birds	طيور مهاجرة
desert safari	رحلة سفاري صحراوية
vacation	عطلة – اجازة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوه
North Africa	شمال افريقيا
Asia	قارة آسيا
habitat	موطن – مسكن
perfect	مثالي – كامل – رائع
shopping	التسوق
environment	بيئة
nature	الطبيعة
pollution	تلوث
species	فصائل – أنواع
distance	مسافة
journey	رحلة (طويلة)
hiking	جولات التنزه (على الاقدام)

Adjectives



popular	شعبي – مشهور
traditional	تقليدي
fantastic	رائع
certain	معين – محدد
safe	آمن
close to	قريب من



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
visit	يزور	visited
sail	يبحر	sailed
damage	يدمر	damaged
design	يصمم	designed
protect	يحمي	protected
respect	يحترم	respected
migrate	يهاجر	migrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
become	يصبح	became
fly	يطير	flew
take	يلتقط - يأخذ	took
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



go snorkeling	يذهب للغوص بأنبوب التنفس
give information about	يعطي معلومات عن
cause lots of pollution	يسبب كثيرا من التلوث
from all over the world	في جميع انحاء العالم
take lots of photographs	يلتقط كثير من الصور
go bird watching	يذهب لمشاهدة الطيور



Definitions تعريفات

sustainable	صديق للبيئة	do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment
simple accommodation	إقامة بسيطة	living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more
accommodation	إقامة	some where you stay
ideal	مثالي	perfect or excellent
respect	يحترم	like something and want to look after it.

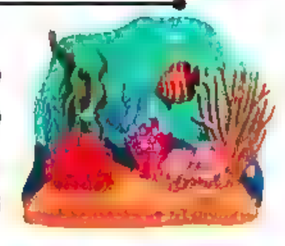
Study the following

1. There are many historical places to visit.
– يوجد أماكن تاريخية عديدة لنزورها.
2. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea.
– يستطيع الناس أن يذهبوا للسباحة بأنبوب التنفس في البحر الأحمر.
3. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
– السياحة البيئية هي طريقة للسفر لا تضر البيئة.
4. Eco-tourism is more sustainable than traditional tourism.
– السياحة البيئية صديقة للبيئة اكثر من السياحة التقليدية.
5. Eco-tourism is designed to protect nature.
– السياحة البيئية صممت لتحمي البيئة.
6. They mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
– لا يجب عليهم أن يسافروا بالطرق التي تسبب كثير من التلوث.
7. Many people are starting to visit Egypt for birds and wildlife watching.
– بدأ عديد من الناس في زيارة مصر لمشاهدات الطيور والحياة البرية.
8. Birds must fly to different countries at certain times of year.
– يجب أن تطير الطيور إلى دول مختلفة في أوقات معينة من العام.
9. There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt.
– يوجد أكثر من ٤٥٠ فصيلة من الطيور في مصر.
10. Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds.
– واحة سيوة هي مكان رائع لترى عديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة.
11. The most important thing is not to hurt nature.
– الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو ألا تضر البيئة.

1 A guidebook gives tourists information about a place. Listen to and read this guidebook. What is eco-tourism?

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important - but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

مصر بلد رائع. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية لزيارتها، بالإضافة إلى المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس أن يذهبوا للسباحة بأنبوب التنفس في البحر الأحمر، أو يذهبوا في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، أو يتسلقوا الجبال، أو يبحروا في النيل. لذا فإن السياحة مهمة - لكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت تحظى بشعبية كبيرة أيضًا.



Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هي وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها صديقة للبيئة أكثر من السياحة التقليدية، وهي مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس في أماكن إقامة بسيطة ليست مثل الفنادق الكبيرة ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

يبدأ الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية. هناك الكثير من الطيور الرائعة لتراها هنا. تهاجر أنواع كثيرة من الطيور، ويجب عليها الطيران إلى دول مختلفة في أوقات معينة من العام، للعثور على الطعام، وبناء أعشاش، أو التمتع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. في كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لفترة طويلة جدًا لمسافات طويلة، وكثير من رحلاتهم تمر فوق مصر، لأنها في شمال أفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.



هناك أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعًا من الطيور في مصر، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لقضاء العطلات لرؤيتهم. على سبيل المثال، واحة سيوة هي مكان رائع لرؤية العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنها موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs! Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

الأشخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور في مصر سيكون لديهم الكثير لرؤيته. ولا يجب أن يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنهم قد يطيرون بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور! تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية شيء رائع للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة والسياحة البيئية هي وسيلة جيدة للناس لفعل ذلك.



Part: 2

Eco-tourism in Egypt
Language Focus



استمع إلى المفردات:



ads	اعلانات
own	خاص
trip	رحلة (قصيرة)
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
protected area	منطقة محمية
tent	خيمة
lizard	سحلية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
camp	يعسكر	camped
hope	يأمل	hoped
scare	يخيف	scared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
go down	تغرب	went down
set off	ينطلق	set off
leave	يترك	left
get to	يصل	got to
spend	يقضي	spent

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



have the chance	لديه الفرصة
take photos underground	يلتقط صور تحت الارض
travel on a river	يسافر عبر النهر
cook outdoors	يطهو بالخارج
go on a tour	يذهب في جولة
go on a desert safari	يذهب في رحلات السفاري الصحراوية

Language focus قواعد لغوية

must / mustn't

➢ We use must when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

◉ نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله

➢ We use mustn't (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

◉ نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

◉ لاحظ يأتى بعد must / mustn't الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You mustn't hurt birds.

◉ لا تأتى to بعد must / mustn't .

Question

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

◉ عند السؤال بهل نستخدم الصيغة التالية

Must + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

Check up Exercises

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between the brackets:

1- They ---------- (mustn't) study their lessons hard.
2- They ---------- (must) play in streets. It is not safe.
3- We must ---------- (visiting) my uncle tomorrow.
4- We musn't ---------- (smoked) in hospitals.
5- Must he practice every day? - Yes, he ---------- (mustn't).
6- Must you ---------- (sleeping) early?
7- Where must he ---------- (go) diving?
8- Why ---------- (they must) study hard?

2 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام must / mustn't :

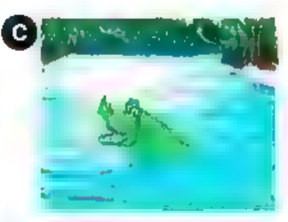
1. You .... respect nature.
2. You .... scare birds or animals.
3. You .... leave trash in the desert.
4. You .... be careful in the natural environment.
5. You .... walk to school today because there are no buses.
6. You .... walk in the desert when it's hot.

3 Read the ads for vacations in Egypt. Match the titles to each ad 1– 4:

a 

Snorkel safari

b 
Desert sunsets

c 
On the river

d 
Birds at sea

1 ....

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!.

2 ....

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

3 ....

Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

4 ....

Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Egypt is an amazing ....
   a house   b city   c country   d town
2. There are many .... places to visit.
   a historical   b small   c tourism   d busy
3. People can go .... in the Red Sea.
   a on vacations   b diving   c snorkeling   d swimming
4. Tourism is .... for Egypt.
   a busy   b important   c dirty   d pollution

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourism is more .... than traditional tourism.
   a designed   b polluted   c respect   d sustainable
2. People stay in simple ...., not large hotels.
   a mountains   b accommodation   c cities   d farms
3. In a/an .... world, we must all be healthy.
   a polluted   b ideal   c well-known   d important
4. The scuba divers explored the ....
   a coral reefs   b tents   c mountains   d desert

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

habitat - Oasis - village - species - migrating

There are over 450 ❶ .... of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa ❷ .... is a fantastic place to see many ❸ .... water birds. It is an important ❹ .... and people must protect it.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. the Red - go - People -snorkeling - in - can - Sea.

----

2. is - to - designed - protect - Eco-tourism - nature.

----

3. at - different - Birds - countries - times - fly to - certain - must .

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You must ---------- (being) careful at school
2. She ---------- (mustn't) help her brother with his homework.
3. ---------- (Must you) respect nature.
4. You ---------- (must) scare birds or animals.
5. You ---------- (must) leave trash in the desert.
6. You must ---------- (are) careful in the natural environment.
7. You ---------- (musn't) walk to school today because there are no buses.
8. You mustn't ---------- (walked) in the desert when it's hot.
9. You ---------- (must not) study birds quietly from a safe place.
10. What ---------- (we must) do when it is hot?
11. Children ---------- (mustn't) respect their parents.
12. Parents must ---------- (took) care of their children.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

why mustn't they play here ---

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

sustainable - accommodation



Part: 1

THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURISM





استمع إلى المفردات:

eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
local people	سكان محليون
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية

campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية



job	وظيفة
tonight	الليلة
exam	امتحان
term	فصل دراسي
keen to	حريص على
do sports	يمارس رياضة
outdoor	في الخارج
traffic	مرور
accommodation	اماكن إقامة
idea	فكرة

cycling	ركوب دراجات
a bit boring	ممل قليلا
fun	ممتع - متعة
recycle	يعيد تدوير
relaxing	مسترخي - مستريح
view	منظر طبيعي
local communities	مجتمعات محلية
continent	قارة
benefit	فائدة
deadline	الموعد النهائي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
damage	يتلف / يدمر	damaged
create	يخلق / ينشيء	created
miss	يفوته	missed
provide	يمد / يزود	provided
support	يساند / يدعم	supported
explore	يستكشف	explored

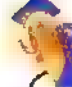
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
learn	يتعلم	learned \ learnt
catch	يلحق بـ	caught
find out	يعرف	found out
get up	ينهض	got up
mean	يعني	meant



Phrases and prepositions

take care of	يعتني بـ	cause less damage	يسبب ضرر أقل
create jobs for	يخلق فرص عمل لـ	whenever possible	متى أمكن
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	sail on the Nile	يبحر في النيل
for two hours	لمدة ساعتين		



Study the following

1. My presentation today is about eco-tourism.
- يدور العرض التقديمى اليوم حول السياحة البيئية.
2. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it.
- مصر بلد جميل للغاية لذلك يجب أن نعتنى بها.
3. Lots of people want to visit Egypt.
- يريد الكثير من الناس زيارة مصر.
4. It is good if we have lots of visitors.
- من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار.
5. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment.
- السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها.
6. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.
- إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التى يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون فى ضرر أقل للبيئة.
7. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.
- إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين.



4 Listen to Lina's presentation about eco-tourism and read her notes. Do they include any of your own ideas?







استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

My presentation[1] today is about eco- tourism[2] and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism[3] can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems[4]. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages[5] the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمى
٢- السياحة البيئية
٣- السياحة
٤- مشكلات
٥- يتلف

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly[6] accommodation,there won't be so many big hotels If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

٦- صديق للبيئة

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?



Language focus

قواعد لغوية

The first conditional (IF)

> We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

◎ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.



Form
التكوين

If + فاعل + present simple, + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

◎ تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple ،

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.
- If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

◎ إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت في المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.

- They will want to protect it if they learn more about the environment.

◎ لاحظ: عند النفي نستخدم التالي

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل.

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.

◎ لاحظ يمكن ان يكون النفى فى احدى الجمل،

- If you don't sleep early, you will be late.

◎ لاحظ: will = 'll , will not = won't

Check up Exercises

1 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between the brackets:**

1. If I ....(went) out tonight, I will go to the cinema.
2. If my mother ....(isn't) get up early, she will not catch the train.
3. If they don't study hard, they ....(will) pass the test.
4. We ....(will) get lost if we use the town map.
5. She will be very sad if you ....(not give) her some flowers.
6. If you have a cold, you will ....(stayed) in bed.
7. She won't play with us if she .... (isn't coming) early.

2 **Complete the sentences:**

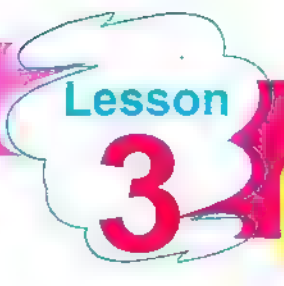
1. If I ....(have) an important exam next term, I ....(study) for it.
2. If you .... (go) to bed late tonight, you .... (not/ get up) early tomorrow.
3. If Omar ....(play) football for two hours, he ....(be) tired!
4. If she ....(feel) thirsty, she ....(drink) some water
5. If we .... (not / work) together, we ....(miss) the deadline!

Score 1 – 6 points: You prefer traditional vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

Score 7 – 12 points: You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

Score 13 – 18 points:

You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you!



Part: 2

Science- Bird Migration
Pronunciation



استمع إلى المفردات:





pelican
بجعة

kingfisher
طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)

swift
طائر السمامة







eagle
نسر / عقاب

flamingo
طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)

falcon
صقر

across	عبر
Europe	اوروبا
European countries	دولة أوربية
Northern	شمالى
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا
water birds	طيور مائية
Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط

oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
scientists	علماء
a long time	وقت طويل
flocks	مجموعات / أسراب



1. **Many birds migrate to and from Egypt.** – تهاجر العديد من الطيور الى ومن مصر
2. **You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water.**
   – يمكنك كثيرا ان ترى أسراب ضخمة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه.
3. **Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.**
   – بحيرة قارون فى الفيوم هي مكان جيد لترى طيور الفلامنجو.
4. **How do these birds know where to go?** – كيف تعرف هذه الطيور أين تذهب؟

Unit 10

1 Listen, point, and say:
استمع، اشر وقل:

❶ 
pelican

❷ 
kingfisher

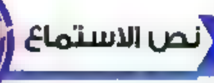
❸ 
swift

❹ 
eagle

2 Listen and read. What do migrating birds eat?
استمع واقرأ. ماذا تأكل الطيور المهاجرة؟


استمع إلى النص:





A long journey رحلة طويلة

⊙ Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

- تهاجر العديد من الطيور إلى ومن مصر وعبرها، بسبب موقعها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا ... لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور دول شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر ... دفئًا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور ...

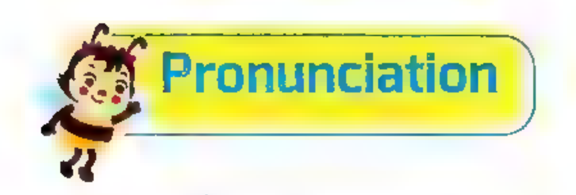
⊙ Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

- تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب ... البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط ... ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات ... بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور الفلامنجو.

⊙ Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور ... لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه ... يستدلون بالشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد قضى ... معرفة كيفية قيامهم بذلك!!





Pronunciation

- تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية حيث تحتوى كل كلمة على مقطع صوتى متحرك على الاقل.
- إذا جاءت الاصوات المتحركة معا دون فاصل تعتبر مقطع صوتى واحد **meat - bread** .
- إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف (e) غير منطوق لا يعتبر مقطع صوتى إلا اذا كان قبله حرف (l) **apple**
- حرف (y) يعد من المقاطع الصوتية . **city**
- عند نطق الكلمة يشدد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية حيث ينطق بصوت اوضح واعلى من الباقى .
- الكلمات المكونة من مقطعيين صوتيين يتم فى الغالب تشديد المقطع الاول.
- الكلمات المكونة من ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية يتم تشديد المقطع الأول أو الثانى.

1 Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat. How many syllables do the words in bold have?

انظر واستمع. كم عدد المقاطع للكلمات المكتوبة بخط سميك؟

1



Eagles migrate to other continents.

2



The **kingfisher** lives near rivers.

2 Read and say the words. Clap the syllables: اقرأ الكلمات. صفق عدد المقاطع الصوتية:

pelican   weather   flamingo   successful   falcon   careful

3 Write the words in the correct column:

اكتب الكلمة فى العمود الخاصة بعد المقاطع الخاص بها:

Two syllables	Three syllables

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourism is very important for Egypt. It has many ....
   a benefits b friends c markets d views
2. If they stay in .... accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.
   a dirty b expensive c eco-friendly d harmful
3. It's easier to work hard if you have a/an ....
   a map b deadline c coast d engineer
4. On vacation, I like to go ....
   a sports b activities c playing d sightseeing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

provides - sightseeing - vacation - fun - polluted

When I want to go on a (1) ...., I like to travel by boat. I like to stay in a small, outdoor hotel room. It is very quiet. I like to go (2) ...., do some sports and activities. I usually see many eco-tourists there. I think eco-tourism is interesting and (3) .... I think it's important that tourism (4) .... jobs for local people.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Birds are some of the most amazing creatures on Earth! Look up and there they might be, flying in the sky with colorful feathers and nice songs. Did you know they're the only animals with feathers, which help them fly (although some like penguins and ostriches can't quite manage it!)? They have different beaks for different foods, sharp beaks for catching insects and flat beaks for searching for seeds.

Birds come in all shapes and sizes, from the tiny hummingbird smaller than your thumb to the giant ostrich taller than a human! They build nests in trees, cliffs, or even the ground.

Birds are always busy, flying around, searching for food, singing sweet songs, and taking care of their families. They're an important part of our world, helping to pollinate تلقيح plants, spread seeds, and even control insect populations. So next time you see a bird, take a moment to thank these feathered friends and all the wonder they bring!.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Birds have different shapes and ....
   a times a sizes b hotels c trunks

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



2. ---------- help birds to fly.

ⓐ Beaks ⓑ Heads ⓒ Feathers ⓓ Noses

3. Birds use their ---------- to catch insects.

ⓐ wings ⓑ feathers ⓒ tails ⓓ beaks

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why are birds important? ------------------------------------

5. Where do they build nests? ------------------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. and - Egypt - birds - to - Many - from - migrate. ----------------------
2. do - where - birds - to go - know - How ? ----------------------
3. to see - is a good - Lake Qarun - place - flamingos. ----------------------

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If I ---------- (missed) the train, I'll take the next one.
2. She ---------- (has) to do this exam again if she passes it.
3. If it ---------- (rain), I won't go to the park.
4. If I ---------- (will study) today, I'll go to the party tonight.
5. If I ---------- (had) enough money, I'll buy some new shoes.
6. She ---------- (be) late if the train is delayed.
7. She'll ---------- (missed) the bus if she doesn't leave soon.
8. If I see her, I ---------- (tell) her.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Why is tourism important in egypt ------------------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

bird migration

Guiding phrases

migrate - large flocks of birds



WRITING & PROJECT




استمع الى المفردات:

the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش

National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية



vocabulary

drought	جفاف
fire	حريق
beach	شاطيء
beautiful	جميل
forest	غابة
problem	مشكلة
area	منطقة
locals	السكان المحليون
weather	الطقس
brightly colored	ألوان زاهية
visitor	زائر
boat	قارب

habitat	موطن
lives	حيوات
blog	مدونة الكترونية
part of	جزء من
different	مختلف
everybody	كل شخص
holiday	اجازة
stick to	يلصق في
litter	قمامة
climate change	تغير المناخ
planet	كوكب
clear	صافي
flood	فيضان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
waste	يهدر	wasted
drop	يرمي - يلقي	dropped
change	يتغير	changed
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up
allow	يسمح	allowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt
come	يأتي	came
cut down	يقطع	cut down
make	يصنع	made
grow	ينمو	grew
ride	يركب	rode
swim	يسبح	swam

Phrases and prepositions  عبارات وحروف جر

make sure	يتأكد	famous for	مشهور بـ
good for	مفيد لـ	care about	يهتم بـ

Study the following

1. I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

– اكتب اليوم عن شيء في اعتقادي أنه هام للغاية.

2. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats.

– أعتقد أنه من المهم أن نحاول جميعا حماية بيئات الحيوانات.

3. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.

– تحتاج الحّيوانات أماكن آمنة للمعيشة. وإيجاد الطعام ورعاية صغارها.

4. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

– الحيوانات جزء من كوكبنا، لذلك يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التى تقوم بها لا تلحق الضرر بهم.

5. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt. Such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.

– هناك العديد من البيئات المختلفة فى مصر مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والانهار.

6 It's good for everybody if we protect the habitats.

- إنه من المفيد للجميع أن نحاول حماية بيئات الحيوانات.

7 When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place.

- عندما تكون البيئة صحية يمكن لكثير من الحيوانات ان تعيش فى مكان واحد.

8 With a good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife- watching holiday.

- وفى وجود سياحة بيئية جيدة. يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية.

9 When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

- عندما يتعلم الأشخاص عن الحياة البرية سيرغبون فى الحفاظ عليها.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

and / but / because / so

١. نستخدم and ومعناها «و» للربط بين أفكار متشابهة فى الأثبات.

- I like my parents and I obey them.

٢. نستخدم but ومعناها «لكن» للربط بين الجمل المتناقضة أو جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- He is rich, but he is unhappy.

٣. كلمة because معناها «لأن» ويأتي قبلها النتيجة وبعدها السبب

- I didn't go to school because I was ill.

٤. كلمة so معناها «لذلك» يأتي قبلها السبب وبعدها النتيجة

- I was ill so I didn't go to school.

1 Listen to and read the blog. What is a habitat? Check (√) the correct answer:

1. a type of animal. ☐
2. a place near water. ☐
3. a place where an animal or plant lives. ☐



Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Arwa - welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. استمع إلى النص

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.



There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.



You don't need a lot of space - here's a garden box I made for my window!



2 Complete these sentences with and, but, because, or so:

أكمل باستخدام الكلمات:

1. We planted flowers .... birds and insects can have more food.
2. We wanted to clean up the beach .... there was trash on it.
3. This was a beautiful river, ... there is pollution in it now.
4. We saw turtles, pelicans, ... lizards when we went wildlife watching.

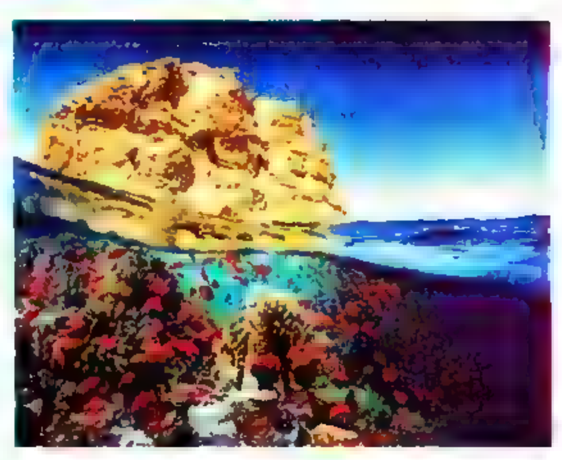
Unit 10

1 Read the leaflet. What is bad for animals?

اقرأ المنشور ما الشيء الضار للحيوانات؟

The Ras Mohammed National Park

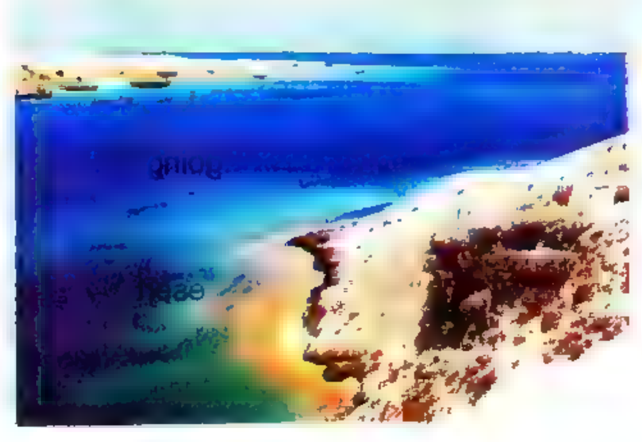
The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and **scuba dive** here.



محمية رأس محمد الوطنية في البحر الأحمر هي منطقة رائعة للسكان المحليين والسياح ليزوروها. هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء تشتهر بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة، والطقس المذهل. الناس يأتون من جميع أنحاء العالم للسباحة بأنبوب التنفس والغوص هنا

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird watching.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.



يمكنك أن ترى الشعاب المرجانية وكثير من الاسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية وربما أسماك القرش. هناك أيضا الكثير من الحياة البرية وهي مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور. المحمية الوطنية تحت الحماية ولكن مسموح للناس أن يزوروها. لأنها جميلة للغاية وكثير من الزائرين يأتون ويركبون القوارب أو يسبحون ويغوصون بأنبوب التنفس في البحر.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Next Friday, my parents is going to ....

a Paris b America c Egypt d England

2. It is the .... time for my parents to go there.

a fourth b second c third d first

3. They also want to go to the .... to see the elephants.

a school b zoo c park d country

4. My parents will stay for .... there.

a two weeks b one year c one month d one week

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We must .... sure that the things we do, don't hurt the animals.

a try b do c respect d make

2. There are lots of different .... in Egypt for animals and birds to live in.

a habitats b accommodations c hotels d banks

3. People can go on wildlife .... vacations.

a watching b changing c washing d going

4. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba ....

a drive b tent c dive d desert

5. The Sinai Peninsula is famous .... its sea life.

a with b away c from d for

6. I used bright colors and some pictures to .... to my leaflet.

a stick b write c make d buy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wildlife - holidays - habitats - protect - eco-tourism

There are lots of different (1) .... in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we (2) .... these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good (3) .... people can come on wildlife watching (4) .... This is good for the country, and good for the people, too.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. all - habitats - should - try to - We - animal - protect. ....
2. Egypt - habitats - in - lots of - different - There are. ....
3. holidays - can - People - wildlife - on - watching - go. ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We planted flowers .... (because) birds and insects can have more food.
2. This was a beautiful river, ... (and) there is pollution in it now.

6 Punctuate the following:

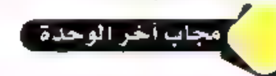
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do you go to school, Hani ....

7 Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

To your friend Sama to tell her about "The habitats". Your name is Nada. Your email address is nada44@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sama22@yahoo.com



New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

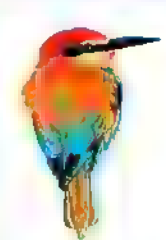
....



Key vocabulary



pelican
بجعة



kingfisher
طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)



swift
طائر السمامة



eagle
نسر / عقاب



flamingo
طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)



falcon
صقر

sustainable	مستدام – صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة
ads	اعلانات
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية
Europe	اوروبا
Northern	شمالى
water birds	طيور مائية

European countries	دولة أوربية
ideal	مثالي – نموذجي
respect	يحترم
protected area	منطقة محمية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد
campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية
oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا

Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط
National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية
flocks	مجموعات / أسراب
the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش
scientists	علماء

Adjectives  صفات

sensible	عاقل / حكيم / منطقي
strange	غريب
popular	شعبي – مشهور
traditional	تقليدي
fantastic	رائع
certain	معين – محدد
safe	آمن
close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hatch	يفقس	hatched
dare	يجرؤ	dared
flock	يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked
succeed	ينجح	succeeded
sail	يبحر	sailed
damage	يدمر	damaged
protect	يحمي	protected
respect	يحترم	respected
migrate	يهاجر	migrated
provide	يمد / يزود	provided
support	يساند / يدعم	supported
explore	يستكشف	explored
waste	يهدر	wasted
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fly	يطير	flew
mean	يعني	meant
build	يبني	built
catch	يصطاد	caught
take	يلتقط - يأخذ	took
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt
go down	تغرب	went down
set off	ينطلق	spent
catch	يلحق بـ	caught
grow	ينمو	grew



Language focus
قواعد لغوية

must / mustn't

◉ نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله

◉ نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

◉ لاحظ يأتي بعد must / mustn't الفعل في المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل .

- You mustn't hurt birds.

◉ لا تأتي to بعد must / mustn't .

Question

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

◉ عند السؤال بهل نستخدم الصيغة التالية

Must + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

The first conditional (IF)

◉ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.



If + فاعل + present simple + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

◉ تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple:

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

◉ إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت في المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.

◉ لاحظ: عند النفي نستخدم التالي

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 2

1 Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit. Tourism is important for Egypt, but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation. They mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

Lesson 3

bird migration

2 Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. Many water birds such as pelicans migrate to Egypt, too. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how these birds migrate.

Lessons 4&5

3 **New Message**

To	sama22@yahoo.com	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	nada44@gmail.com	
Subject	the habitats	

Dear Sama,

We should all try to protect animal habitats. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. We mustn't waste water or drop litter, etc. Write to me soon.

Love

Nada

Al-Azhar Exercises

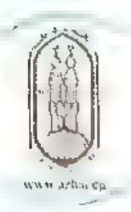
Animal Habitats

4 There are many animal habitats. Some animals can live in the desert other animals can live in the forest. Lots of animals can live in rivers. Some animals can live in the sea, too. We should protect them.

Test

The Ras Mohammed National Park

5 The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Red Sea. It is fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. It is a beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula. It is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish. You might see sharks there, too.



Al-Azhar Test

الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

famous - doing - Sea - National - fantastic

Ali : Hello, Ahmed. What are you ❶ ____________?

Ahmed : Hello, Ali. I am reading about Ras Mohammed ❷ ________ Park.

Ali : Well, Where is it?

Ahmed : It is on the Red ❸ ____________

Ali : What do you know about it?

Ahmed : It is ❹ ____________ for its sea life.

Ali : Wow! It's a ❺ ____________ place.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1 swim	dive	careful	hatch	------
2 worm	successful	sensible	real	------
3 river	desert	lake	sea	------
4 How	Who	Which	Watch	------
5 oases	swift	eagle	flamingo	------

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some birds fly very long __________ .

   a skies b distances c clouds d mountains

2. We __________ sleep early every day.

   a mustn't b are c have d must

3. Some local birds __________ to another places.

   a migrate b like c hatch d try

4. If I am hungry, I __________ a snack.

   a has b will have c having d have to



5. The .... is the biggest bird in the world.

a eagle   b swift   c flamingo   d ostrich

6. When you have a fever. You .... play in streets.

a mustn't   b didn't   c can   d must

7. This bird has beautiful ....

a problems   b feathers   c distances   d habitats

8. We wanted to clean up the beach .... there was trash on it.

a and   b because   c so   d but

9. We mustn't .... here because there might be crocodiles!

a swims   b swimming   c swam   d swim

10. If something is ...., it happens and is true.

a successful   b similar   c sensible   d real

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Rahma and her family went on a vacation to Alex two years ago. They visited many historical buildings there. On Sunday, They visited the library of Alexandria. It is an amazing building. They also visited the Quitbay Citadel on Monday. It is on the sea there. It is a very ancient building. On Thursday, they went to the beach and swam in the sea. They stayed in a nice hotel there. They spent seven days there.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What did they do two years ago?

....

2. Which places did they visit there?

....

3. When did they go to the library?

....

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The passage is about a ....

a vacation   b palace   c museum   d library

5. They spent .... in Alex.

a a month   b seven days   c one week   d a year



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. hummingbird - the - is - The - bird - smallest - bee.

----

2. don't - build - birds - nests - Singing .

----

3. go - can - People - safari - on - Egypt - a desert - in.

----

4. bring - definitely - our - going to - cameras - We're.

----

5. People - go - vacations - on - wildlife - can - watching.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Animal habitats

the desert - forests - the mountains - the sea - protect



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Akram's family is a __________ one.
   a big   b modern   c old   d small
2. Akram lives in a big apartment in __________.
   a Cairo   b Giza   c Aswan   d Alex
3. He wants to buy some __________ and a new phone.
   a food   b drinks   c animals   d Alex
4. He visits his uncle on __________.
   a Monday   b Friday   c Tuesday   d Saturday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The __________ of the rare turtles is being damaged.
   a habitat   b drinks   c parks   d journey
2. She is a / an __________ girl. She always get high marks.
   a hungry   b similar   c successful   d strange
3. Wildlife watching is __________ for people who respect nature.
   a migrating   b rude   c careful   d ideal
4. We should __________ after the environment.
   a try   b look   c make   d take

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

flocks - way - migrate - Lake - sea

Many water birds ① ____________ to Egypt. You can often see large ② __________ of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes,oases, and seas. ③ ____________ Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the ④ ____________.

1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eco-tourism in Egypt offers a number of **sustainable** experiences. Visitors can explore colorful coral reefs and enjoy water sports along the Red Sea, while desert safaris provide a good chance for tourists to discover the natural beauty of the desert.

Climbing mountains in the Sinai Peninsula offers amazing views and a chance to connect with nature for those who climb **its** mountains. A calm way to enjoy Egypt's wildlife and ancient culture is to take a relaxing sail down the Nile.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Desert safaris allows the tourists to discover the beauty of the ....

   a mountain   b Nile   c coral reefs   d desert

2. The underline word "**sustainable**" means to ....

   a damage the environment   b look after the environment
   c explore coral reefs   d climb a mountain

3. The underlined words "**its**" refers to ....

   a Sinai Peninsula   b the desert   c the Nile   d the Red Sea

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What can visitors do along the Red Sea?

   ....

5. Summarize the second paragraph into one sentence.

   ....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. birds - see - There - lots of- to - interesting - are.

   ....

2. to see - beautiful - a tour - some - We're - birds - going on.

   ....

3. take - the environment - You - to - of - want - care.

   ....



6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We mustn't .... (wastes) water or drop litter.

2. If they study more, they .... (passes) the exam.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

you might have four eggs in a nest

----

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

The Ras Mohammed National Park

fantastic - amazing weather





How can I help?

كيف يمكننى أن اساعدك؟







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about charity work and volunteering.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن العمل الخيرى والتطوع.

2. Use infinitives of purpose.

- يستخدم الطالب المصدر لتوضيح الغرض أو سبب فعل الشيء.

3. Read and understand three texts about mystery objects.

- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ثلاثة نصوص عن أشياء غامضة.

4. Listen to an interview about volunteering.

- يستمع الطالب إلى مقابلة عن التطوع.

5. Use -ly and others adverbs.

- يستخدم الطالب الأحوال المنتهية بـ(ly-) والاحوال التى لا تنتهى ب(ly-).

6. Read and understand a story about two brothers.

- يقرأ ويفهم الطالب قصة عن أخين.

7. Say words containing (sh,ch,and tch).

- يقول الطالب كلمات بها الأصوات (tch - ch - sh).

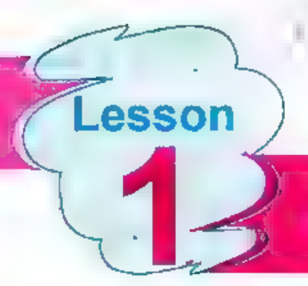
8. Write a biography of a volunteer. - يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص متطوع.

9. Create a leaflet about being a good citizen.

- ينشئ الطالب منشور عن كيفية أن تكون مواطن صالح.







A visit to the Museum





استمع إلى المفردات:

donate	يتبرع
participate	يشترك / يشارك
support	يؤيد / يدعم
volunteer	يتطوع

help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	يُؤسِّس / ينشئ
look after	يعتنى بـ
(be) kind to (adj)	يكون لطيف تجاه



community	المجتمع
idea	فكرة
fresh	طازج
vegetable garden	حديقة خضروات / نباتية
popular	مشهور / محبوب
trash	قمامة
after-school club	نادى ما بعد المدرسة
skills	مهارات
nervous	قلق / متوتر

kindergarten	روضة أطفال (حضانة)
paintings	لوحات / رسومات
own	خاص بـ
sick	مريض
neighbor	جار
store	متجر
used to	اعتاد أن
get better	يتحسن
had to	مضطر أن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start	يبدأ	started
support	يدعم	supported
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
paint	يلون	painted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
choose	يختار	chose
grow	يزرع	grew
teach	يعلم / يدرس	taught
think	يفكر	thought



Unit 11

train	يتدرب	trained
decide	يقرر	decided
donate	يتبرع	donated



take	يأخذ	took
make	يصنع	made
have / has	يمتلك	had

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

It's really good fun	هذا أمر ممتع حقًا	difficult for her...	صعب عليها
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	look forward to + (v-ing/noun)	يتطلع إلى
at first	فى البداية	on a Thursday	يوم الخميس
for 45 minutes	لمدة ٤٥ دقيقة		

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام آداة النكرة (a) قبل أيام الأسبوع للحديث عن يوم واحد معين.

- She died on a Tuesday.



Definitions التعريفات

donate	يتبرع	to give something away to help a person or organization[1].
participate	يشارك	to take part [2] in something
support	يدعم	to do things that help a particular[3] person or group.
volunteer	يتطوع	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.

Arabic Meaning
١- منظمة
٢- يشارك
٣- معين

Study the following

1. **We all had to choose something we could do to support other people.**

– كان يجب علينا جميعًا اختيار شئ يمكننا القيام به لدعم الآخرين.

2. **People wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables.**

– أراد الناس بدء تنفيذ حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة.

3. **People volunteered to help clean trash from the river.**

– تطوع الناس للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر.

4 I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.
- بدأت الانضمام فى ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الصغار مهارات كرة القدم.

5 It was great to have so many children participating.
- كان من الرائع مشاركة هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

6 We train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football.
- نحن نتدرب و نلعب الألعاب. احب رؤية الأطفال يتحسنون فى كرة القدم.

7 I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday.
- قررت المساعدة فى فصل رياض الأطفال يوم الخميس.

8 We are starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week.
- سنبدأ مشروع حيث يفكر فيه الأطفال فى قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل.

9 I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick.
- اعتقد انه سيكون من الجيد ان تفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى.

10 We took the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.
- أخذنا اللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

11 My neighbor has always been kind to us. - كانت جارتى دائمًا لطيفة معنًا.

12 She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger.
- اعتادت ان تساعد امى فى الأعتناء بى عندما كنت أصغر سنًا.

13 What did some people want to grow?
- ماذا أراد بعض الناس أن يزرعوا؟

14 Our parents donated lots of toys.
- تبرع والدينا بكثير من اللعب.

1 Match the words in the box to their meanings. You can use a dictionary?

صل الكلمات بالاطار مع معانيها،

donate - participate - support - volunteer

1. to do things that help a particular person or group: ....
2. to take part in something: ....
3. to do a job or activity and not take any money for it: ....
4. to give something away to help a person or organization: ....

2 Listen and read. How often does Tamer volunteer?

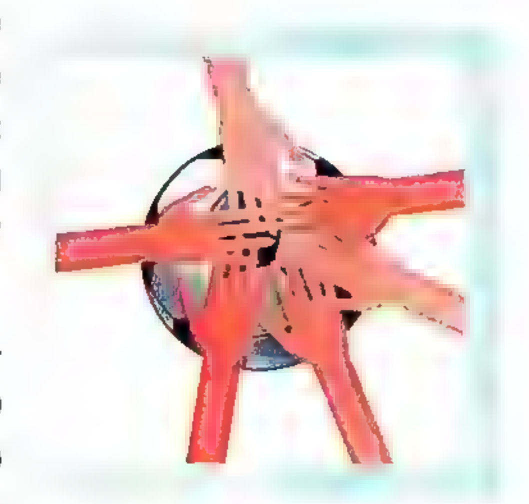
استمع واقرأ. كم مرة قام تامر بالتطوع؛


استمع إلى النصوص؛




نص الاستماع

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.



– مرحبًا، أنا تامر. بدأنا مشروعًا في المدرسة يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار على سبيل المثال؛ أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة. كان ذلك محبوبًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون بيئات الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

– قررت أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك انضممت إلى ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنت متوترًا بعض الشئ في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان أباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

– اقوم بتدريس الحصة بعد المدرسة أيام الأربعاء. مدة الحصة ٤٥ دقيقة، حيث نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال يتحسنون في كرة القدم، وهذا أمر ممتع جدًا.

1 Listen and read about some more ideas for the Community Help project. Then answer the questions:

استمع واقرأ لبعض الافكار عن مساعدة المجتمع. ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

Reem

I love reading, so I decided to **help out** in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too.

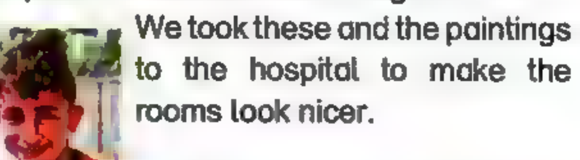
We're **starting up** a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.

Our parents **donated** lots of toys too.





We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

Mariam



My neighbor has always **been kind to** us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

2 Read and circle the correct words:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. I think it's very important to be **kind to / kind at** animals.
2. My mom sometimes **helps on / helps out** at the school library.
3. I **looked after / looked for** my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
4. We decided to **start on / start up** a local children's charity.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

There are charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture and nature..

يوجد جمعيات خيرية بجميع أنحاء العالم لمساعدة الناس والحيوانات والكوكب. هم يقدمون المساعدات بعدة اشكال مختلفة متضمنة التعليم والصحة والثقافة والطبيعة .

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The neighbor lives with ___ ________.

   a her brother b her husband c her sister d no one

2. They spend time ___________.

   a eating pizza b sleeping c watching TV d playing football

3. They water ___________ in the garden.

   a flowers b floors c flour d foods

4. The neighbor is very ___________ to her.

   a cruel b kind c bad d sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eman ___________ a large amount of money to a charity.

   a borrowed b took c donated d trained

2. Students are encouraged to ___________ in sports activities.

   a participate b dislike c hate d plane

3. Mr Badr ___________ to take us all in his car.

   a played b volunteered c said d made

4. I should ___________ my little sister.

   a took after b look out c start up d look after

5. Habiba is five years old. She goes to the ___________.

   a prep school b primary school c university d kindergarten

6. I like eating ___________ fruit and vegetables.

   a fresh b bad c sad d hat

7. My sister was sick, and she was in the ___________.

   a garden b park c hospital d bank

8. We decided to start ___________ a local children's charity

   a on b at c in d up

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

forward - stories - help - project - look

I love reading, so I decided to 1 .... out in the kindergarten class on a Tuesday by reading to the children. I love reading 2 .... with the younger children. We are starting up a 3 .... where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking 4 .... to that.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. did - people - What - to grow - want - some?

....

2. pet - looked after - my neighbor's - I - cat

....

3. donated - Our - toys - parents - lots of.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

who did Tamer want to help ....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A volunteering project you did

Guiding questions

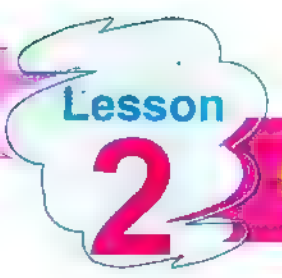
1. What ideas did you do for the community Help project?
2. When did you start up your project?

....

....

....

....

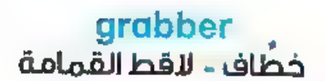


We use this to pick up the trash





استمع إلى المفردات:

grabber
خطّاف - لاقط القمامة



nature camera
كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم في البرية)



multi-grip
قبضة متعددة



controller
جهاز تحكم



handle
مقبض

button	زر
joysticks	عصا التحكم في الألعاب
film (ed)	يصور فيلمًا

install (ed)	يركّب (جهاز)
record (ed)	يسجّل



Other words كلمات أخرى

clean up	عملية التنظيف
gloves	قفازات
metal stick	عصا معدن
finger	أصبع
jar	برطمان
glass bottle	قارورة من الزجاج
strong enough	قوي كفاية
wildlife	الحياة البرية
character	شخصية

action button	زر الحركة
home button	زر الصفحة الرئيسية
day center	مركز نهاري – لمساعدة كبار السن
interesting	شيق
menu	قائمة
a top	غطاء زجاجة
games console	وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية
exhibition	معرض
day center	مركز نهاري – لمساعدة كبار السن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
carry	يحمل	carried
drop	يُلقى	dropped
jump	يقفز	jumped
press	يضغط	pressed
protect	يحمى	protected
collect	يجمع	collected
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
run	يجرى	ran
hold	يمسك	held
show	يوضح	showed
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



pick up the trash	يلتقط القمامة	swim under water	يسبح تحت الماء
take off the tops	يخلع الغطاء	on the ground	على الأرضية
takes you back to	يعود بك إلى	at the top	على القمة
do other actions	يقوم بأفعال أخرى	in the bag	فى الحقيبة
turn on the radio	يشغل المذياع	goes over ears	يوضع فوق الأذنين
play a game	يلعب لعبة		

ملحوظة: كلمة (controller) وكلمة (joystick) لهما معنى متقارب جدًا ولكن يمكن اعتبار (controller) مصطلح اشمل وأعم من (joystick):

Definitions

button	زر	something you press to make something happen.
controller	جهاز تحكم	something we use to play a computer game.
joystick	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب	something you can move in different directions to control a computer game

Study the following

1. We carry black bags for the trash we collect.
- نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها.
2. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end.
- إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بإصبعين في النهاية.
3. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top.
- تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض في الأعلى.
4. It's better than picking things up with your hands.
- انه افضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.
5. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top.
- امسك البرطمان بيد واحدة (مقبض متعدد) وضع هذا في الأعلى.
6. We are using them to film wildlife.
- نحن نستخدمهم (الكاميرا الطبيعية) لتصوير الحياة البرية.
7. When you press the home button, it takes you back to the menu.
- عندما نضغط زر الصفحة الرئيسية، فإنه يعيدك إلى القائمة.
8. You use the action buttons to tell your character to run or jump.
- يمكنك استخدام أزرار الحركة لإخبار شخصيتك (في ألعاب الفيديو) بالجري أو القفز.
9. Do you want to play a game with me?
- هل تريد أن تلعب معي؟

1 Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النصوص:

Tamim

1. grabber



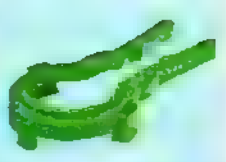
When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدي قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها. وانظر! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنها متعة كبيرة في الاستخدام. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بإصبعين في نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض في الإعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق أصابعك لالتقاط سلة المهملات، ثم تضعها في الكيس. تقول أمي أنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

2. multi-grip

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.



انا متطوع فى مركز نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لخلع الأغطية. هذه هى الطريقة التى تستخدمها. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضعها لأعلى. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقًا سهلة الاستعمال. أحب عرض ذلك على الأشخاص فى المركز النهارى.

Hamza

3. nature camera

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher **installed** two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to **film** animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we **record** how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!



نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع الحياة البرية فى المدرسة وقد قام معلمى بتثبيت اثنين منهما فى الغابة. نحن نستخدمهم لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم سجلنا عدد الحيوانات والطيور التى نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

2 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة

1. Why does Tamim use a grabber on a beach clean-up?

----

2. Why do the old people use a multi-grip?

----

3. Why does Hamza's teacher put nature cameras in the forest?

----

3 Read and listen to the dialog. Do you think Amira's mom has played a video game before? Why / Why not?

اقرأ واستمع للحوار. هل تعتقد أن والدة أميرة لعبت ألعاب الفيديو من قبل؟ لماذا/ لما لا؟



استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

Amira: Oh, that's the **controller**. It's what you use to play the game.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?

Amira: That's the home button. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.



Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for?

Amira: Those are the action **buttons**. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

Mom : And what are these parts for?

Amira: They're the **joysticks**. They help you move your character around.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.

Amira: That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?

Language Focus: قواعد لغوية

Infinitives of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ **We use to + a verb in the base form to explain why we do something:**

◉ تستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◉ **We use also to + a verb in the base form to answer questions with Why.**

◉ تستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
To protect my hands.

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتي بعدها اسم:

- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

Check up Exercises

◉ **Read and correct the form of the words.**

1. I bought a card ---------- (to sent) to my grandma.
2. Reham listens to music ------------ (help) her relax.
3. My uncle went to Cairo -------------- (to visiting) a friend.
4. I went to the supermarket ----------- (to bought) fresh fruit.
5. We go to school ------------- (for learn).
6. Rahaf studies hard ----------- (pass) her exam.
7. My mom is using an app ------------ (to learning) French.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a long metal stick with two fingers at the end.
   a begger b ruler c grabber d leader
2. A .... is a place where we can help old people.
   a city center b day center c town center d school
3. We are using .... to film wildlife.
   a controllers b handles c buttons d nature cameras
4. The plumber is coming to .... the new washing machine.
   a fall b write c feel d install
5. Old people use a .... to take off the tops.
   a multi-grip b joystick c controller d begger
6. When you press the home ...., it takes you back to the menu.
   a land b button c bottom d town
7. There are two .... on the game console.
   a fingers b tools c joysticks d sticks

2 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Video games can be a great source of fun for kids, but it's important to choose the suitable game for each age. The game could be educational or just for fun. You should keep in mind a few things when selecting video games for kids.

Consider your child's interests when choosing a game. Do they like puzzles, adventure games, or sports games?

Some games can help kids learn new things, such as math, science, or language skills. Look for games that teach educational skills in a fun and enjoyable way.

Multiplayer games can be a great way for kids to make friends and communicate with others. Just make sure the game online is safe.

No matter what kind of game you choose, make sure it's something that your child will enjoy playing. And have fun playing together!

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. It's important to choose the suitable game for each..............
   a color b time c age d name

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. Some games can help the kids ....friends.

a do b make c hate d dislike

3. Online games should be ....

a safe b popular c bad d annoying

B: Answer the following questions:

4. What new things can the kids learn from games?

----

5. What is the importance of multiplayer games?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. does - on the radio - What - do - the button?

----

2. easy - It's - use - really - to.

----

3. this - Is - games console - new - your?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

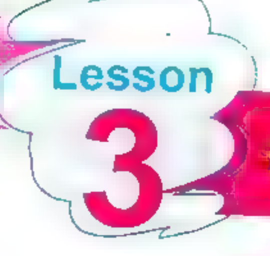
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I went to the sports center ----------(play) volleyball.
2. Rana turned on the radio ----------(to listened) to the news.
3. I'll open the fridge ----------(to drank) water.
4. Nesma wears sunglasses ----------(for protect) her eyes.
5. Sondos goes to the library ----------(reading) books.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

come here, jona.



It's good to give back to the community




استمع إلى المفردات:

confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع تبرعات / اعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود

sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس

summer school	مدرسة صيفية
volunteering	التطوع
advice	نصيحة
teenager	مراهق
the richest	الأغنى
broken (adj)	مكسور
wing	جناح
strong	قوى
huge	ضخم
full of	ملىء بـ

alone	وحيدًا / بمفرده
gold	ذهب
silver	فضة
thick	سميك
the moon	القمر
skills	مهارات
look down	ينظر إلى اسفل
look after	يعتنى بـ
fly away	يطير بعيدًا
disappear	يختفى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
want	يريد	wanted
share	يشارك	shared
disappear	يختفى	disappeared
reply	يرد	replied
climb	يتسلق	climbed
reach	يصل	reached

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
break	يكسر	broke
cut	يقطع	cut
grow up	يكبر	grew up
fly	يطير	flew
find	يجد	found
catch	يمسك	caught



Unit 11

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



a broken wing	جناح مكسور	catch a sparrow	يصطاد عصفور
give a reward	يقدم مكافأة	reach the moon	يصل القمر



Definitions

confidence	ثقة	feeling sure about your abilities
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	spend time with people in a friendly way
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	collecting money for a charity
give back	يرد الجميل	to help because you have received so much
reward	مكافأة	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful
jealous	غيور	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want

Study the following

1. The older brother was the richest man in the village.
   – كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل فى القرية.
2. The younger brother was kind and shared what he had with his friends.
   – كان الأخ الأصغر لطيفًا وشارك ما كان لديه مع أصدقائه.
3. The younger brother found a bird with a broken wing.
   – عثر الأخ الأصغر على طائر بجناح مكسور.
4. The younger brother cared for the bird all winter.
   – اعتنى الأخ الأصغر بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء.
5. Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me.
   – ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنى بها كما اعتنيت بى.
6. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver.
   – عندما فتح الأخ واحدة (من الخضروات) كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة.
7. The older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing.
   – امسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه.
8. A thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon.
   – نما نبات سميك وطويل وصعد إلى القمر.
9. The older brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward.
   – تسلق الأخ الأكبر النبات للبحث عن مكافاته.

10 The older brother didn't find any gold.

- لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب.

11 The younger brother lived happily and helped others.

- عاش الأخ الأصغر بسعادة وساعد الآخرين.

1 Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار



Presenter:
Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader, Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

Rawan:
I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

Presenter:
Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

Rawan:
It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

Presenter: That sounds like difficult but rewarding work.

Rawan:
Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

2 Read the last part of the interview and match the words in bold with the correct meanings

اقرأ أخر جزء فى المقابلة وصل الكلمات المكتوبة بخط سميك مع معانيها الصحيحة:

1. socialize	a. collecting money for a charity
2. confidence	b. to help others because you have received so much
3. fundraising	c. spend time with people in a friendly way
4. give back	d. feeling sure about your abilities

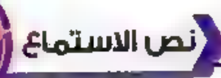
Rawan You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to **socialize** and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you **confidence**. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. **Fundraising** helps charities get the money they need. It's good to **give back** to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

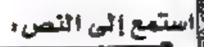


3 Read and listen:

اقرأ واستمع:









Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

دات مرة كان هناك شخصان مختلفان تماما. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل فى القرية. لقد كان ثريا. لكنه كان دائما يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الاخ الاصغر ثريا. لكنه كان لطيفا ويشارك ما لديه مع اصدقائه.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

فى احد الايام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرا مكسور الجناح. قال: "لا تقلق ايها الطائر الصغير". انا سوف أعتني بك. اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء وعندما صح الطائر قويا مرة أخرى، قال: "يمكنك الطيران بعيدا الآن". قال الطائر "اولا، اريد ان اعطيك مكافأة. ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتني بها كما اعتنيت بي".

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهي تنمو لتصبح نبات ضخما يحتوي على خضروات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما قطع الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! لقد اصبح الآن أغنى رجل فى القرية.

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

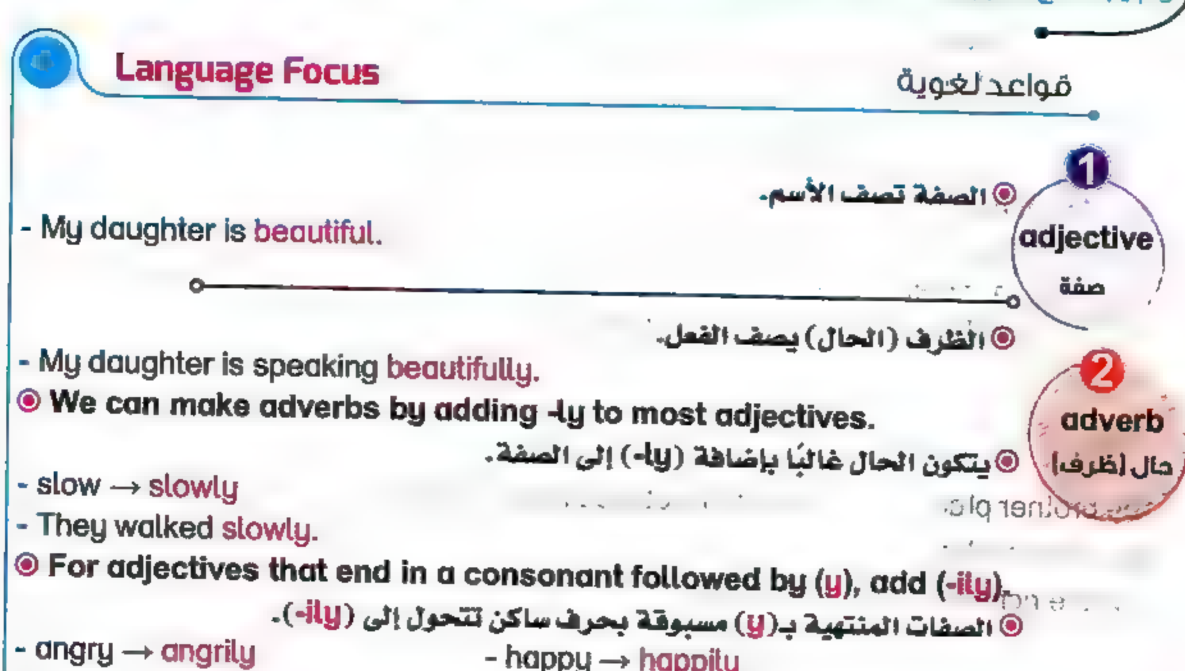
كان الأخ الكبير غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. في اليوم التالي، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. قال: "سأعتني بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطيني مكافأة". اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قويًا، قال: "الآن أريد مكافأتي". أجاب الطائر الصغير: هذه هي مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتني بها جيدًا.

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

ولم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب. والآن ينظر اسفل القمر، ويشاهد أخيه الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الأخرين.



Language Focus
قواعد لغوية

1 adjective صفة

◉ الصفة تصف الأسم.

- My daughter is beautiful.

2 adverb حال (ظرف)

◉ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◉ **We can make adverbs by adding -ly to most adjectives.**

◉ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (-ly) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◉ **For adjectives that end in a consonant followed by (y), add (-ily).**

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (-ily).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◉ **For adjectives that end in (le) we omit (e) and add (y).**

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly
- gentle → gently

Position of the adverb مكان الحال في الجملة

◉ يأتي الحال عادة بعد الفعل.

- Our team is playing badly.

◉ يمكن أن يأتي الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.

- She quickly learned the rules.

◉ يمكن أن يأتي الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned the rules quickly.

◉ لا يأتي الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned quickly the rules.(XX)



◉ لاحظ هناك احوال شاذة.

1- Some adverbs are irregular:

good → well   fast → fast   hard → hard   right → right
late → late   wrong → wrong   early → early   high → high

2- Use how to ask about adverbs:

◉ استخدم كيف للسؤال عن الحال.

- How did Mo Salah play last match?
  He played very well.

3- feel - become - get - look - sound

◉ هذه الأفعال يأتي بعدها صفة وليس حال.

- I feel happy when I see her.

Check up Exercises

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nagwa and Lama played ------------ (happy) in the park.

2. Gameela ------------- (gentle) picked up the cat.

3. Eman learned how to play chess ----------- (good).

4. Hoda isn't very ----------(well) at basketball.



5. Soha closed the window ------ ------ (quiet) as everyone was asleep.

6. Tarek saw his friend dropping litter and shouted ---------- (anger) .

7. A: How does Aya eat? B: She eats ---------- (hungry) .

2 Use the adjectives in the box to make adverbs. Then complete the sentences:

استخدم الصفات فى الإطار لصياغة الأحوال ، ثم اكمل الجمل:

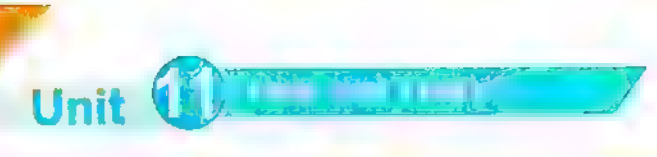
angry - bad - good - fast - quiet

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays -------------
2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really -------------.
3. Sherif opened the door ---------- --- because his little brother was sleeping.
4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very --- -------.
5. I heard two people shouting ---------- in the street today.

3 Are the sentences correct (×) or incorrect (✓)? Correct the incorrect sentences:

هل الجمل صحيحة ام غير صحيحة؟ قم بتصحيح الجمل الغير صحيحة:

1. Adam was very hungry, and he ate his meal quickly. ☐
2. Their cousins donated kindly money to our charity. ☐
3. Mr Ibrahim waited patiently for the train to arrive. ☐
4. Fareeda plays beautifully the piano and the violin. ☐
5. Dalida volunteered happily at the children's day center. ☐





◉ ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /sh/ مثل نطق (ش) فى اللغة العربية ونرمز لها بالرمز الصوتى /ʃ/ مثل (ship).
◉ ندرس أيضًا نطق الرمز الصوتى /tch/ - /ch/ مثل نطق (تش) فى اللغة العربية ونرمز لها بالرمز الصوتى /tʃ/ مثل (chip).

1 Look, listen, and repeat

انظر واستمع وردد





sound /tch/



watch يشاهد / ساعة يد



catch يصطاد / يمسك



kitchen مطبخ



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Teenagers should .... if they can.

a write b play c volunteer d eat

2. You learn to talk to people you wouldn't ....

a meet b run c lead d feed

3. It's good to .... to the place where you live.

a give back b give away c give out d give up

4. Volunteering gives you ....

a confidence b importance c happiness d sadness

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He likes seeing the .... flying in the sky.

a rats b penguins c donkeys d sparrows

2. .... helps charities get the money they need.

a Confidence b Give back c Fundraising d Socialize

3. I will give you a .... for your hard work.

a river b cliff c time d reward

4. I hate .... people.

a jealous b helpful c useful d good

5. They .... a lot of money to charities.

a ate b donated c killed d beated

6. .... the carrots up into small pieces.

a Shop b Chop c Write d Play

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. plays - tennis - Younis - well.

----

2. after - looked - bird - the - The man .

----

3. was - The bag - full of - and - gold - silver.

----

4. younger - wasn't - The - rich - brother.

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is eating his sandwich ----------- (hungry) .
2. He is studying ------ (hardly).
3. I heard a boy shouting ------------- (angry) in the class.
4. A: How did she play the piano? B: She played ---------- (good) .

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

rawan learns many skills



Writing: A biography and project





استمع إلى المفردات:

youth	الشباب
social sciences	علوم إجتماعية
citizen	مواطن
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات
award	جائزة



biography	سيرة ذاتية
early life	في بداية حياة
volunteering	التطوع
preparatory school	المدرسة الإعدادية
university	جامعة
leader	قائد
successful	ناجح
since then	منذ ذلك الحين
heading	عناوين
waste	نفاية / مخلفات
surprised	مندهش
leaflet	منشور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
participate	يشارك	participated
raise	يجمع	raised
reduce	يقلل	reduced
organize	ينظم	organized
respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
lead	يقود	led
run	يدير	ran
win	يفوز	won



Phrases and prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر

do a beach clean-up	يقوم بعملية تنظيف الشاطئ	make the world better place	جعل العالم مكان أفضل
deliver food boxes	يوصل صناديق الطعام	reduce waste	تقليل النفايات
raise money for	يجمع أموال لـ	participate in	يشارك فى
win an award	يفوز بجائزة	do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
run a charity	يُدير منظمة خيرية		



Reward: مكافئة غير رسمية (بسيطة)

I gave him a reward for good behaviour

Award: جائزة رسمية – يفضل ذكر اسم الجائزة

Fareeda won the "2020 community worker" award.

Study the following

1. Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.
   – ساعدت فريدة والدتها فى شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.
2. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up.
   – قامت هى وفريقًا من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ.
3. She organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.
   – نظمت أول حدث خيرى لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات فى المجتمع.
4. She organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.
   – نظمت حدثًا لجمع التبرعات (المعونات) لجمع الأموال لانشاء ملعب جديد.
5. Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo.
   – بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة تطوعية مجتمعية فى القاهرة.
6. Help people who are old or sick. – ساعد الناس المسنين أو المرضى.
7. Let's all be good citizens. – دعونا جميعًا نكون مواطنين صالحين.
8. Volunteering isn't boring, It's interesting. – العمل التطوعى ليس مملًا. هذا عمل رائع.

1 Read Fareeda Hassan's biography. How many cities participated in the "Youth Give Back" event?

اقرأ السيرة الذاتية لفريدة حسن. كم عدد المدن المشاركة في حدث الشباب يرد الجميل؟

Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

- فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية.



Early Life

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

- الحياة المبكرة

ولدت فريدة حسن في الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها في شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنا.

Volunteering at School

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

- العمل التطوعي في المدرسة.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة الإعدادية في عام ٢٠٠٦. وهنا شاركت في أول عمل تطوعي لها. قامت هي وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. وفي عام ٢٠١٠ نظمت أول حدث خيري لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات في المجتمع.

The University Years

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

- سنوات الجامعة.

في عام ٢٠١٢ ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وقد نظمت هنا حدثا لجمع التبرعات لجمع الأموال لإنشاء ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

- العمل في الجمعيات الخيرية.

في عام ٢٠١٧ بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة مجتمعية متطوعة في القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفي عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع "الشباب يرد الجميل" في ست مدن في مصر. لقد كان ناجحا جدا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة العاملة المجتمعية لعام ٢٠٢٠. واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.




2 Read the leaflet. How can you reduce waste?

اقرأ المنشور. كيف يمكنك تقليل النفايات؟

Ways to Be a Good Citizen

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

طرق لتكون مواطنًا صالحًا:

– هناك الكثير من الطرق التى يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك:

Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

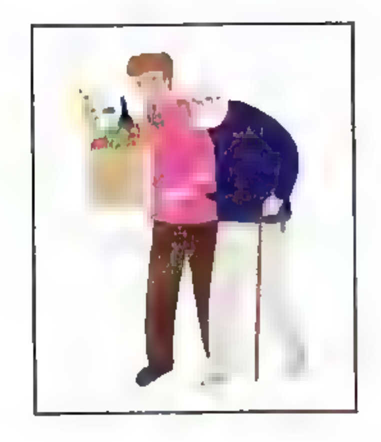
حماية البيئة:

– تقليل النفايات ومساعدة البيئة. لا تستخدم الأكياس البلاستيكية أو الزجاجات البلاستيكية. إذا كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية فى المنزل قم بإعادة تدويرها. دعونا نكون جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!

Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترام الآخرين:

– كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بمهام لهم فى المنزل.





Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

ساعد المجتمع:

– تطوع فى حدث خيرى محلى أو ساعد فى مشروع مجتمعى. العمل التطوعى ليس مملًا. إنه شيق. سوف تتفاجئ بمدى استمتاعك به.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My family .... a restaurant in Zagazig.
   a play b walk c run d study
2. Let's all be good .... and make the world better.
   a charity b trains c cities d citizens
3. Fareeda Hassan won the "2020 Community Worker" ....
   a cup b award c pen d track
4. We are .... money for charity.
   a raising b rising c lending d stealing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

citizens - recycle - produce - look after - reduce

I am a part of a charity that helps the environment.We should (1) .... waste and we shouldn't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home (2) .... them. We should (3) .... the old people. It aims to make us good (4) ....

3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- let's visit cairo. ....
2- what award did she win ....

4 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

Guiding phrases

start vegetable garden - help clean trash from rivers

....
....
....

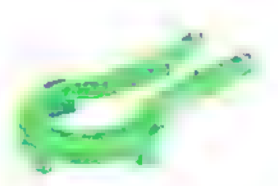




grabber
خطّاف - لاقط القمامة



nature camera
كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم فى البرية)



multi-grip
قبضة متعددة



controller
جهاز تحكم



handle
مقبض

donate	يتبرّع
participate	يشترك / يشارك
joysticks	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب
confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع تبرعات / اعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود
social sciences	علوم إجتماعية

help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	يُؤسّس / ينشئ
sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات
award	جائزة
citizen	مواطن

Conjugation of Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
start	يبدأ	started
support	يدعم	supported
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
train	يتدرب	trained

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
choose	يختار	chose
grow	يزرع	grew
teach	يعلم / يدرس	taught
put	يضع	put

decide	يقرر	decided
donate	يتبرع	donated
protect	يحمى	protected
collect	يجمع	collected
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
reach	يصل	reached
participate	يشارك	participated
raise	يجمع	raised
reduce	يقلل	reduced

hold	يمسك	held
show	يوضح	showed
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt
break	يكسر	broke
grow up	يكبر	grew up
lead	يقود	led
run	يدير	ran
win	يفوز	won

Language Focus: قواعد لغوية

A Infinitives of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

◎ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◎ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
  To protect my hands.

◎ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

B Adverbs

1 adjective صفة

◎ الصفة تصف الأسم.

- My daughter is beautiful.

2 adverb حال (ظرف)

◎ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◎ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (ly-) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◎ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily-).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◎ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly
- gentle → gently

Position of the adverb

◎ يأتى الحال عادة بعد الفعل.

- Our team is playing badly.

◎ يمكن أن يأتى الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.

- She quickly learned the rules.

◎ يمكن أن يأتى الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned the rules quickly.

◎ لا يأتى الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned quickly the rules.(XX)



مهارات الكتابة

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Lesson 1

A volunteering project I did

1. Last week, I decided to help our neighbors to clean our streets. We called our neighbors in the streets next to us. We all agreed to collect money to buy tools for cleaning and trees to plant them in front of our houses. We were happy because little children participated in this project, too.

Lessons 4&5

Help your community

2. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There are a lot of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteer to help clean trash from the river, so that animals, habitats are safer.

Al-Azhar Test

3. I like playing video games on my laptop. I spend many hours playing games with my friends. We played games at the weekend. We play games after we finish our homework. We have fun and enjoy eating popcorn and drinking juice.

Activity- Unit 11

4. **New Message**

To	salma@hotmail.com	**Cc Bcc**
From	menna@gmail.com	
Subject	How to be a good citizen	

Dear Salma,

How are you and your family? I read a leaflet yesterday about how to be a good citizen. We should be polite and kind to our neighbors especially the old people. We should reduce waste and help the environment by planting trees. We should work together to make the world a better place. See you Soon.

Yours,

Menna



1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

joysticks - video - together - happy - controller

Mom : Why are you ❶ ....?

Amira : I'm happy because I bought a new ❷ ....

Mom : Why did you buy it?

Amira : To play ❸ .... games .

Mom : What are these parts?

Amira : They are the ❹ ....

Mom : Let's play ❺ ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	good	slow	bad	quickly	.....
2	protect	visit	learn	ate	.....
3	how	were	where	what	.....
4	zoo	park	school	study	.....
5	Reem	Mona	Ali	Ola	.....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People .... to help clean trash from the river.
   a slept b cut c volunteered d put
2. To ...., is to take part in something.
   a participate b support c donate d give
3. My father .... thousands of pounds to charity.
   a bought b lent c donated d played
4. We decided to .... up children charity.
   a end b start c play d read

5. The older brother was .... He wanted to take his brother's house.

a quiet b polite c kind d jealous

6. I bought eggs and flour .... a cake.

a making b to make c to making d make

7. Fareeda was born .... 1994.

a on b in c at d of

8. She .... learned the rules.

a bad b quicker c slow d quickly

9. She speaks French ....

a good b bad c well d happy

10. **A:** Why are you buying this book? **B:** .... it.

a To reading b Read c To read d From reading

Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Salah was 18 years old and went to the city school. He was good at football, so he was in his school team. He always played very well. He scored a lot of goals. Salah's grandparents usually came to see him when there was a match, and they were always happy when other people said "Your grandson plays very well". Salah's school wishes to win this match to win the cup.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. When did Salah's grandparents feel happy?

....

2. How old was Salah?

....

3. What sport was Salah good at?

....

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Salah's .... come to see him play.

a parents b friends c grandparents d family

5. Salah wishes to win ....

a the concert b the cup c the party d the glasses



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. after - the class - I - school - teach.

----

2. a charity - for - Fareeda - children - runs.

----

3. new - my - games - That's - console.

----

4. We - help out - on - should - project - a community.

----

5. do - you - gloves - Why - wear?.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

laptop - spend - joysticks - friends - popcorn

ON UNIT 11 Activity

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I volunteer to help .... people.
   a young   b bad   c adult   d old
2. Their hands aren't .... enough.
   a weak   b high   c long   d strong
3. They use a .... to take off the tops.
   a controller   b button   c multi-grip   d joysticks
4. It's really .... to use.
   a easy   b bad   c difficult   d different

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The pandas natural .... is the bamboo forest.
   a hobby   b habit   c fur   d habitat
2. To .... is to spend time with people in a friendly way.
   a socialize   b confidence   c give back   d advice
3. ".........." means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.
   a Happy   b Jealous   c Nervous   d Pleased
4. At the markets I'd prefer to pay in ....
   a cash   b dish   c dash   d flash

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rise - participate - volunteer - raise - teach

I'm Remas. At my school, we started a project to help our community. We (1) .... money to save the roads for disabled people.We can (2) .... to plant trees along the streets. Clever students (3) .... the class after school to help them pass exams. We want everyone to (4) .... in this project.





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Bicycles are important for young people and adults. People use them to go from one place to another. They use them for fun and for work. The history of the bicycle is interesting. In 1818, they had no pedals. The pedals were added in 1839. **They** made the bicycles move faster than the old ones.

Cycling is now an exciting sport and a means of transport. Using the bicycle to go to school is a clean way for the environment. Riding bicycles keeps the air clean. It doesn't need a big space to park. So a lot of people in crowded cities prefer riding them.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Bicycles are important for ....

a young people　　b adults
c both adults and young people　　d babies

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....

a people　　b scientists　　c bicycles　　d pedals

3. Cycling is a .... way for the environment.

a clay　　b clean　　c black　　d bad

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What do people use the bicycle for? ....

5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. learn - things - Volunteers - many - important.

....

2. university - is - the - studying - at - She.

....

3. heard - two people - I - shouting - in the street - angrily.

....



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Youssef is fantastic at football. He plays football .... (good).
2. I buy a bottle of water .... (for drink) it.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

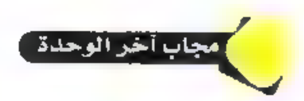
why do the old people use a multi-grip

....

Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Salma about how to be a good citizen, your name is Menna and your email address is menna@gmail.com and your friend's email address is salma@hotmailcom.



the old people - plant trees

New Message

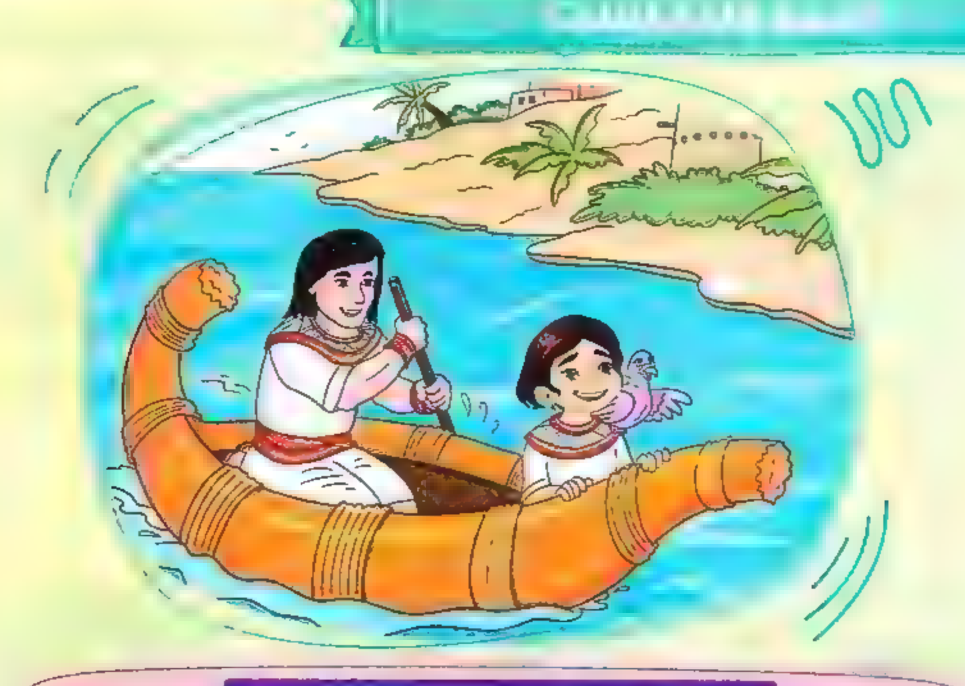
To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

Unit 12 Fiction Reader



Objectives of the Reader

أهداف القصة

1. Read, understand and enjoy a fiction text. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمتع بنص خيالي.
2. Comprehension and critical thinking questions.

   ٢ - يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة الفهم والتفكير النقدي.
3. Identifying who said what from the story. ٣ - يحدد الطالب من قال الجملة من القصة.
4. Discuss the story and the moral. ٤ - يناقش الطالب القصة والدرس الاخلاقى بها .
5. Notes on what happened next. ٥ - يدون الطالب ملاحظات عما سيحدث بعد ذلك بالقصة.
6. Reading, understanding, and appreciating a story.

   ٦ - يقرأ الطالب القصة ويفهمها ويقدر الرسالة التى بها.
7. Being merciful to animals. ٧ - يتعلم الطالب اهمية الرفق بالحيوان.
8. Appreciating Ancient Egyptian history. ٨ - يقدر الطالب التاريخ المصري القديم.



Characters of the Reader



شخصيات القصة







Amethyst

اماثيست (الحمامة)



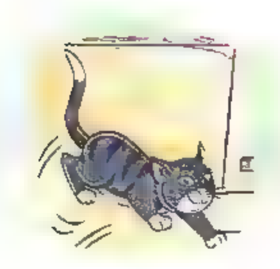
Atemu

أتيمو



Nedjem

نجم



Nedjem's cat

قطة نجم



Atemu's Mom

والدة أتيمو



Atemu's Father

والد أتيمو





Mr Akhon

السيد آخون





Picture Dictionary
قاموس الصور

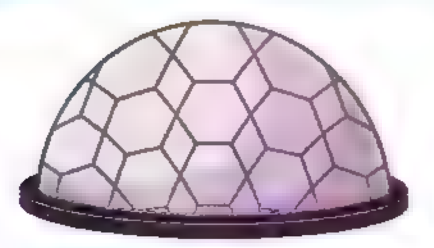



amethyst
جمشت (حجر كريم)


carpenter
نجار


carrier pigeon
حمام زاجل


coo
يهدل (صوت الحمام)


dome
قبة


dovecotes
ابراج الحمام


jewelry
مجوهرات


order
طلب/طلبية


scribe
كاتب


yard
فناء



The Reader
القصة



استمع إلى المفردات:



Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter[1]. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially[2] birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard[3]. Every day, Atemu gave some grain[4] to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

[illegible]

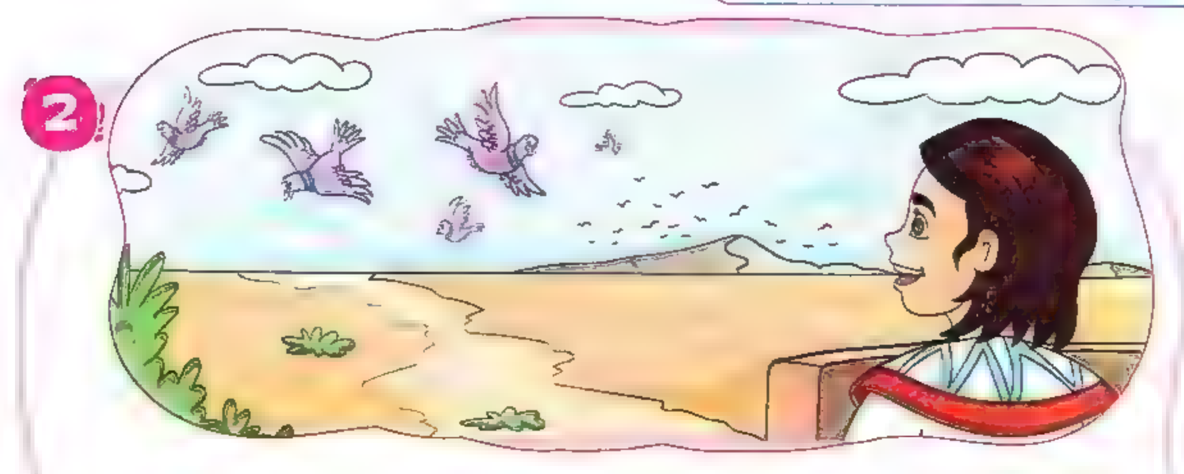
[illegible] على الطيور لكنها لم تمسك بها ابدًا. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.



1- carpenter	نجار	2- especially	خاصة	3- yard	فناء	4- grain	حبوب



2



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange[1] noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock[2] of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby[3].

“Mom! Mom!” shouted Atemu. “There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?” His Mom came out of the house and looked. “Wow!” she said. “Yes, you can go.” She filled a bowl[4] with grain. “Here, you are,” she said kindly. “You can take this for them.”

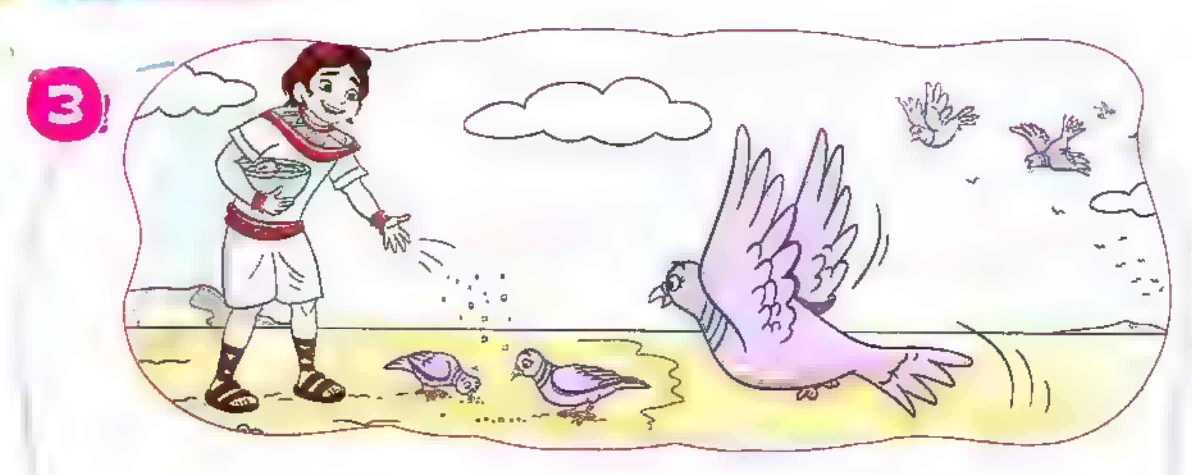
في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في الفناء عندما سمع صوتًا غريبًا. نظر لأعلى ورأى شيئًا مذهلاً. وكان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. كانوا يهبطون إلى حقل قريب

صاح أتيمو "أمي! أمي!". "هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب ورؤيتهم؟"

خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت للطيور وقالت "رائع!". "نعم، يمكنك الذهاب." وملأت وعاءً بالحبوب وقالت بلطف: "تفضل". "يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لهم."

1- strange	غريب	2- flock	سرب	3- a field nearby	حقل قريب	4- bowl	وعاء/سلطانية





When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe[1] his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers[2] on its neck and purple feathers on its chest[3]. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.

Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily[4]. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

[illegible]

[illegible]

طيور جميلة! كانوا ينادون بعضهم البعض باصوات ممده.

[illegible]

ايمو وهم يذهبون



1- believe يصدق	2- feathers ريش	3- chest صدر	4- hungrily بنهم







Then he noticed[1] a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo[2], coo, coo, coo," it went.

"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.

"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.

The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different[3] too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks[4], but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes[5] on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.

Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him. Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following[6] him!

"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ أتيمو طائرًا عند قدميه. كان ينظر إليه وأصدر صوت الهديل.

قال أتيمو: ليس لدي أي حبوب أيها الطائر. وأصدر الطائر صوت الهديل.

كان الصوت مختلفًا عن الطيور الأخرى. بدا الطائر مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا كان أكبر. أما الطيور الأخرى فكانت مناقيرها صفراء، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رماديًا داكنًا. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضًا خطوط على جناحيه. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا.

عندها فقط سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه. مشى أتيمو بسرعة لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!

قال أتيمو: لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟ ولكن الطائر كان يهدل فقط.

1- noticed	لاحظ	2- Coo	صوت هديل الحمامة	3- looked different	بدا مختلفا
4- beaks	مناقير	5- stripes	خطوط	6- was following	كان يتبع





When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while(1) he cleaned vegetables for dinner.

Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too. Suddenly(2), the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.

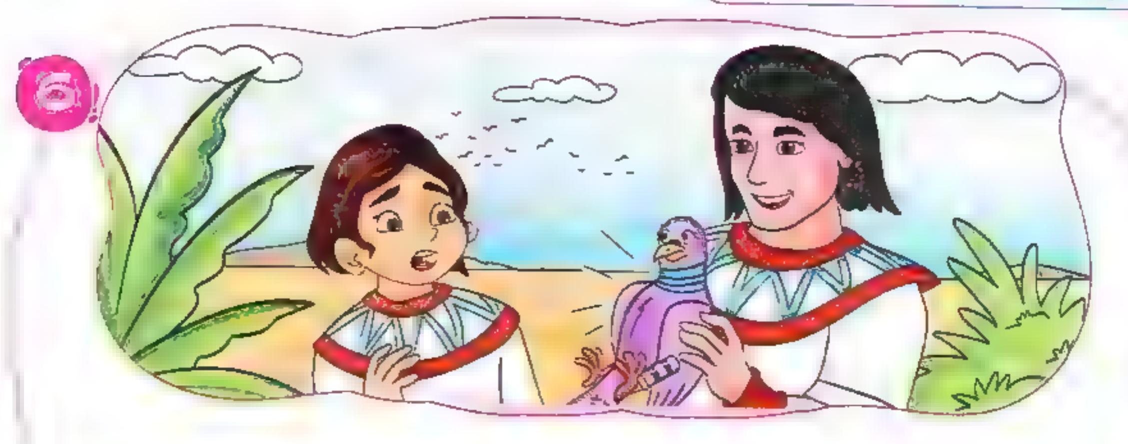
"You should catch(3) rats and snakes, not birds!" she said. "What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt(4)?" "Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing(5), it made a quiet sound. "I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

[illegible]
لتناول العشاء.

[illegible]
الطير لم يطير بعيدا. ركضت نجم والتقطت القطة.

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
اتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه أصيب".

1- while	أثناء	2- Suddenly	فجاءه	3- catch	يصطاد
4- hurt	مصاب	5- its left wing	جناحه الايسر		



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg." "Poor bird![1]" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object[2] from the bird's leg.

It was a very small wooden box[3]. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper[4] was inside. "It's a message![5]" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon[6]." "What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر. فقال والده لديه جناح مصاب، وفي رجله شيء» يا له من طائر مسكين!". "ما هذا؟" أخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.

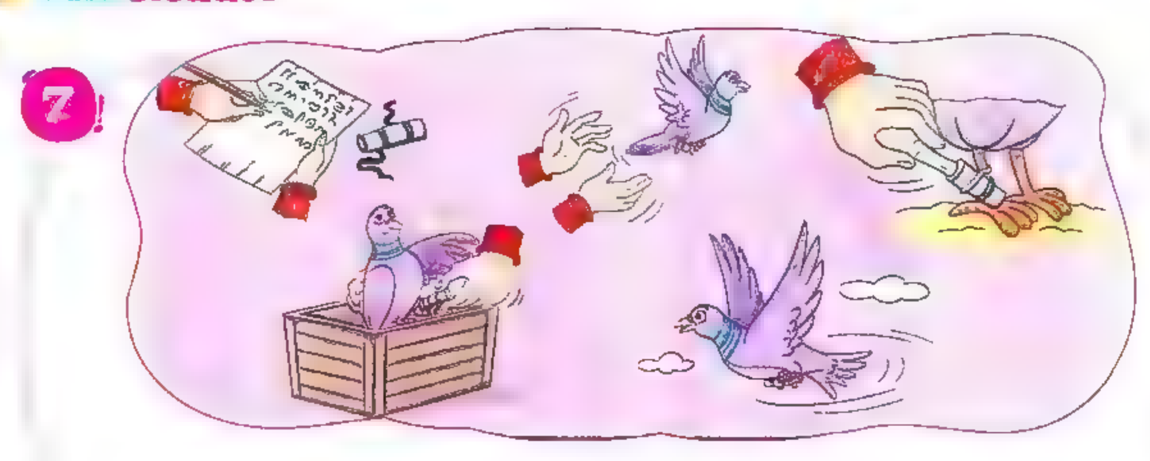
لقد كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا. فتحه والد أتمو. وكانت هناك قطعة من ورق البردي بالداخل. قال والد أتمو إنها رسالة!". هذا الطائر من الحمام الزاجل". فسأل أتيمو "ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟".

1- Poor bird	طائر مسكين	2- object	شيء	3- wooden box	صندوق خشبي
4- papyrus paper	ورق البردي	5- message	رسالة	6- carrier pigeon	حمام زاجل





7



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep[1] pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places.

When there is news from that place, they attach[2] the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."

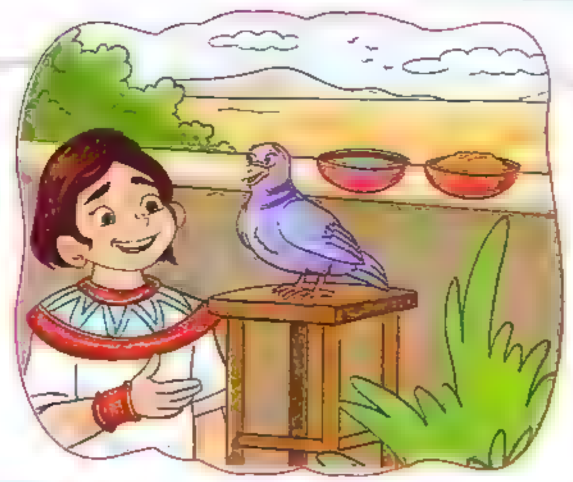
"That's very clever![3]" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?" "I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe[4].

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل. "يقوم الأشخاص المهمة في المدينة بتربية [illegible] سيعلم الحمام أين يعيشون. ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة [illegible] من ذلك المكان، يربطوا الرسالة بالطائر. يطير إلى المنزل ويحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يطلق عليهم الحمام الزاجل."

قال أتيمو: "هذا أمر ذكي جداً!" "إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟" قال والده: "لا أعرف." "سوف آخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب

1- keep	يربي	2- attach	يربط
3- clever	ماهر / ذكي	4- scribe	كاتب





Atemu looked after[1] the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily[2].
Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.
"Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu. "Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant[3] in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order[4] for a lot of gold jewelry[5] from the capital[6] city. It was very important for him."
"Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week."
"Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again.
Every morning, it flew to the roof [7] where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend.
"I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. صنع لها طاولة عالية لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها. وأعطاها الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها. هدلت الحمامة بسعادة.
ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.
قال أتيمو "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟". قال والده. "نعم". كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة يسمى السيد آخون. أخذت له الرسالة وكان سعيدًا جدًا! كانت تحمل الرسالة طلب للكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد كان أمرًا مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له."
"يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."
قال أتيمو بهدوء: "نعم يا أبي". وفي الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة في الطيران مرة أخرى.
وفي كل صباح، كانت تطير إلى السطح حيث كان ينام أتيمو وكانت تهدل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا جدًا بالصداقة الجديدة للحمامة
قال لها بصوت خافت: "لا أريدك أن تعودي إلى المنزل".

1- looked after اعتنى بـ	2- happily بسعادة	3- jewelry merchant تاجر مجوهرات	4- order طلبية
5- gold jewelry مجوهرات ذهبية	6- capital عاصمة	7- roof سطح المنزل	





The Reader

9



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder(1).

Atemu was excited(2) because it was his first trip(3) to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.

But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white domes(4) with many small holes(5) in the yard or on the roof.

"What are they?" asked Atemu.

"Those are dovecotes(6)." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses(7) for pigeons."

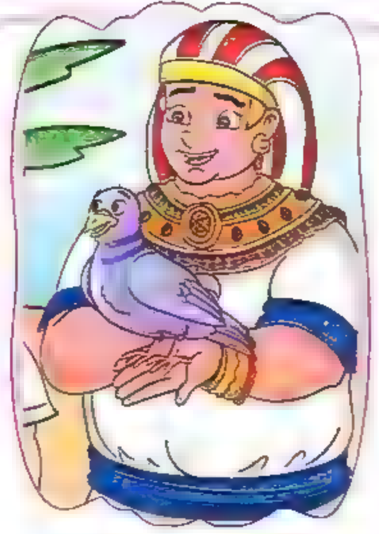
[illegible]
كتف اتيمو.

[illegible]
الاخير مع الحمامة.

[illegible]
للحمام."

1- shoulder	كتف	2- excited	متحمس	3- trip	رحلة	4- domes	قباب
5- holes	فتحات	6- dovecotes	ابراج الحمام	7- special houses	بيوت خاصة		





Finally [1], they arrived at a large house. “We’re here!” Atemu’s father said.

A smiling[2] man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

“Welcome to my home!” Mr Akhon said. “Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer[3]. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst[4] – because her feathers are the same color[5] as these purple stones[6]. She is my best bird!”

“She was hurt,” said Atemu.

“I see,” said the merchant. Can she fly now?”

“Yes,” said Atemu. “She’s much better.[7]”

“Come with me then. I’ll show you where she lives.”

وأخيرا وصلوا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو. "ها قد وصلنا!"

جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهم. كان يرتدي الكثير من الحلى. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.

"قال السيد أخون أهلا وسهلا بك في منزلي!" "شكرا جزيلا لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت رسالة من أهم عملائي (زبائني). وشكرا لرعاية حمامتي. اسمها أماثيست - لأن ريشها من نفس لون هذه الحجارة الأرجوانية. إنها أفضل الطيور لدي!

قال أتيمو: "لقد أصيبت".

قال التاجر: "فهمت". هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

قال أتيمو: "نعم". "إنها أفضل بكثير".

"تعال معي إذن. سأريك أين تعيش".

1- Finally	أخيرا	2- smiling	مبتسم	3- customer	زبون	4- Amethyst	اماثيست (اسم حجر كريم)
5- the same color	نفس اللون	6- purple stones	احجار ارجوانية اللون	7- much better	افضل بكثير		





Atemu and his father followed[(1)] Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side,[(2)] there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.

"How many do you have?" said Atemu.

"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon. "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly[(3)]."

Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute[(4)]!" Atemu said.

"It's time to go, son[(5)]," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird.

[illegible]
طويلة. قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريبًا".

سأله أتيمو كم لديك من الحمام ؟.

[illegible]

[illegible]

قال والد اتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني". "قل وداعا للطائر.

1- followed تبع	2- At one side على جانب واحد	3- exactly بالضبط
4- cute لطيف/جميل	5- son ابن	







"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile.

The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.

"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."

"Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now.

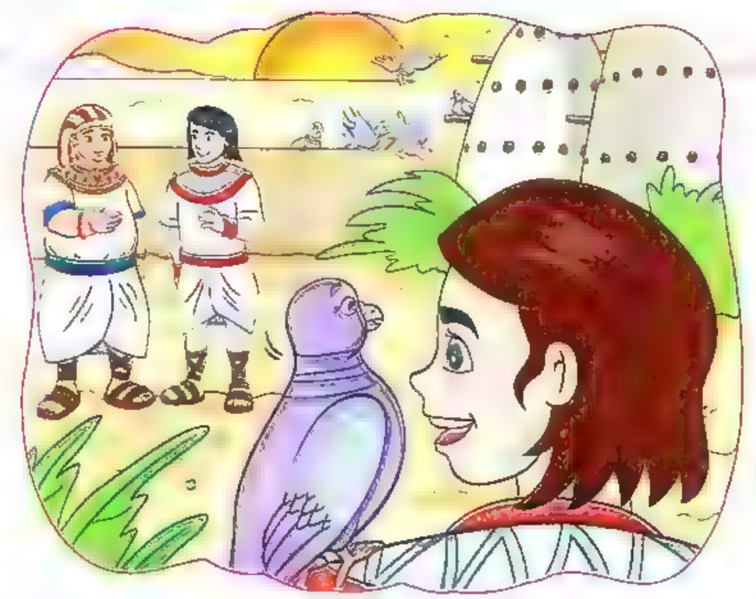
قال أتيمو بصوت حزين: "وداعا يا اماثيست". لمس ريشها الأرجواني، فهدلت. كان حزينا جدًا، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم.

وكان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. و تحدث إلى أتيمو.

"انت تقول أن اماثيست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد الى المنزل."

قال أتيمو "نعم". "حسنًا، اعتقد انها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن





"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.

"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.

"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."

"I'll help you," said his dad.

[illegible]
"ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير".
[illegible]

On the boat home, Atemu's father said. "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said. "Yes. How can I thank him?"

"You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter[1] for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu!"And Amethyst can take it to him!"

[illegible]
[illegible]
قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك رسالة شكر".
قال أتيمو "إفكره جيده!" ويمكن لاماثيبست ان باخذها إليه"

1- a thank you letter خطاب شكر



1 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة حول الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What is the story mainly about?

   a. a cat that can't catch birds

   b. a boy who loves birds

2. When and where did the story happen?

   a. in the Nile Delta, in Ancient Egypt

   b. in Cairo, a few years ago

2 What did you learn about Atemu and his family? Write and answer T (True) or F (False).

ماذا تعلمت عن عائلة اتيمو؟ أكتب صح T أو خطأ F.

1. Atemu lives in a big town. ☐
2. Nedjem is Atemu's older sister. ☐
3. Atemu is ten years old. ☐
4. Atemu goes to school. ☐
5. Atemu's father makes things from wood. ☐
6. Atemu has a cat. ☐

3 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs.

أكمل الفقرة بأفعال فى صيغة الماضى البسيط.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds ❶ ______ (come) into his yard, and Atemu ❷ ______ (give) them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never ❸ ______ (catch) them. One day, Atemu ❹ ______ (hear) a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and ❺ ______ (throw) grain to the birds. The birds ❻ ______ (eat) the grain and then ❼ ______ (fly) away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

4 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story.

أكمل الفقرة وتأكد من اجاباتك فى القصة.

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their ❶ ______ and ❷ ______ feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was ❸ ______ than the other birds. They had ❹ ______ beaks, but its beak was ❺ ______. It also sounded different. The ❻ ______ the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had ❼ ______ on its wings, but they didn't.





Activity



1 Answer the questions: أجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Why couldn't the bird fly? ....
2. What did the bird have on its leg? ....
3. What kind of bird is it? ....
4. Who is Mr Akhon? ....
5. What will Atemu and his father do next week? ....
....

2 Complete the sentences with the words: أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات:

home - leg - news - orders - pigeons

1. Important people in Ancient Egypt often kept carrier ....
2. Carrier pigeons can learn where their .... is.
3. Carrier pigeons often carried .... from one place to another city.
4. People used carrier pigeons to send .... to merchants.
5. People attached their messages to the pigeon's ....

3 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:

من قال ذلك فى القصة؟ اقرأ وأكتب الأسماء:

Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem

1. "I think its wing is hurt," ....
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" ....
3. "It can't fly," ....
4. "That's very clever!" ....
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." ....



1 **Check ALL the correct answers:** ضع علامة ✓ على الاجابات الصحيحة:

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu?

- [ ] Atemu helped his business.
- [ ] Atemu looked after his pigeon.
- [ ] Atemu was feeling sad.

2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon?

- [ ] The pigeon couldn't fly now.
- [ ] Mr Akhon knew Atemu wanted the pigeon.
- [ ] Mr Akhon wanted to thank Atemu for helping him.

3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man?

- [ ] Mr Akhon didn't have to give Amethyst to Atemu.
- [ ] Mr Akhon made a lot of beautiful jewelry.
- [ ] Mr Akhon gave Amythest to Atemu.



2 Complete the puzzle with these words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بالكلمات من القصة؟ ما الكلمة المظللة بالاصفر

amethyst - carpenter - coo - dome - jewelry - order - pigeons - yard

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

Review 4




استمع إلى النصوص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

Arabic Meaning

١- جغرافيا
٢- وضح/فسر
٣- بيئات
٤- قريب من
٥- حياة برية
٦- حريص/حذر
٧- يتلف/يدمر

Reader: I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography[1] today and our teacher explained[2] it really well. For example, you mustn't throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural habitats[3]. However, people mustn't get too close to[4] the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near wildlife[5]. I think people must be careful[6] not to damage[7] the environment when they travel.


Listen and look: استمع وانظر:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة مجتمعية
٢- بذور
٣- محلي
٤- مستشفى
٥- متعة/مرح

Narrator:1

Reader A: This is our community garden[1], where we plant seeds[2] to grow fruit and vegetables. The fruit and vegetables are then shared with people in the local[3] area who can't buy or grow their own.



Narrator:2

Reader B: A good way to help children who are in hospital[4] is to read with them. Not only is it fun[5] for them, but it can actually help them to felt better.



Narrator:3

Reader C: Last year, we started a "Plant a tree" project[6] for our local park. Every new tree has sponsors[7]. The sponsors are people who pay some money[8] to help look after the tree. The more sponsors we have, the more trees we can plant. This year, we can buy lots of trees because we did so well last year.

Narrator:4

Reader D: When you volunteer[9] at a food bank[10], you can sort or make food for people who don't have enough to eat. It's a great way to help others, and volunteering for a charity[11] like this can be good for your well-being, too.

٦- مشروع
٧- راعي/ممول
٨- نقود
٩- يتطوع
١٠- بنك الطعام
١١- جمعية خيرية







Read the story about "The little Red Hen":

The little Red Hen

Once upon a time[1] there was little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy! One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat and the dog to help her plant some wheat. They all said "No!" A month later, the wheat grew tall and the hen wanted to cut the wheat. She asked the mouse, the cat and the dog. "Can you help?" They all said "No!" When she cut the wheat, the hen wanted to make some flour[2], but all three animals refused[3] to help. Finally, when the hen finished all her work, she felt very hungry and she decided to bake a big chocolate cake. No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but when the mouse, the cat, and the dog smelled the delicious cake, they wanted to eat with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?"

Arabic Meaning

١- ذات مرة
٢- دقيق
٣- رفض



General Revision on Units 10 & 11

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١٠ - ١١

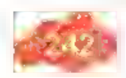
Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 10)

pelican	بجعة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)
swift	طائر السمامة
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة
ads	اعلانات
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية
Europe	اوروبا
Northern	شمالى
water birds	طيور مائية
Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط
National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية
eagle	نسر / عقاب
flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)
falcon	صقر
European countries	دولة أوربية
ideal	مثالي - نموذجي
respect	يحترم
protected area	منطقة محمية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد
campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية
oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا
flocks	أسراب / مجموعات
the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش
scientists	علماء

(Unit 11)

grabber	لاقط القمامة - خطّاف
nature camera	كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم فى البرية)
multi-grip	قبضة متعددة
donate	يتبّرع
participate	يشارك / يشترك
joysticks	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب
confidence	ثقة
controller	جهاز تحكم
handle	مقبض
help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	ينشئ / يُؤسّس
sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات



fundraising	جمع تبرعات / اعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود
award	جائزة
citizen	مواطن
social sciences	علوم إجتماعية

Adjectives  صفات

(Unit 10)			
sensible	عاقل / حكيم / منطقي	fantastic	رائع
strange	غريب	certain	معين - محدد
popular	شعبي - مشهور	safe	آمن
traditional	تقليدي	close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			[illegible]		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ
(Unit 10)					
hatch	يفقس	hatched	fly	يطير	flew
dare	يجرؤ	dared	mean	يعني	meant
flock	يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked	build	يبني	built
succeed	ينجح	succeeded	catch	يصطاد	caught
sail	يبحر	sailed	take	يأخذ - يلتقط	took
damage	يدمر	damaged	hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt
protect	يحمي	protected	go down	تغرب	went down
respect	يحترم	respected	set off	ينطلق	spent
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	catch	يلحق بـ	caught
provide	يزود / يمد	provided	grow	يزرع	grew
support	يساند / يدعم	supported			
explore	يستكشف	explored			
waste	يهدر	wasted			
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up			
(Unit 11)					
support	يدعم	supported	choose	يختار	chose
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	grow up	ينمو	grew up
train	يتدرب	trained	teach	يعلم / يدرس	taught

Revision 1

donate	يتبرع	donated	hold	يمسك	held
collect	يجمع	collected	show	يوضح	showed
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	break	يكسر	broke
participate	يشارك	participated	grow	يكبر	grew
raise	يجمع	raised	lead	يقود	led
reduce	يقلل	reduced	run	يدير	ran

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

(Unit 10)

must \ mustn't

◉ نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله

◉ نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

◉ لاحظ يأتى بعد must / mustn't الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You mustn't hurt birds.

◉ لا تأتى to بعد must / mustn't .

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

◉ عند السؤال بهل نستخدم الصيغة التالية

Must + فاعل + مصدر + تكملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

The first conditional (IF)

◉ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + present simple + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

◉ تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple :

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

◉ إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت في المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.

◉ لاحظ: عند النفي نستخدم التالي

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.

(Unit 11)

A [illegible] of purpose [illegible]

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
  To protect my hands.

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتي بعدها اسم:
- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

B [illegible]

1 adjective صفة

◉ الصفة تصف الأسم.

- My daughter is beautiful.

2 adverb حال (ظرف)

◉ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◉ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (ly-) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily-).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly
- gentle → gently

Position of the adverb مكان الحال في الجملة

◉ يأتي الحال عادة بعد الفعل.
- Our team is playing badly.

◉ يمكن أن يأتي الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.
- She quickly learned the rules.

◉ يمكن أن يأتي الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.
- She learned the rules quickly.

◉ لا يأتي الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.
- She learned quickly the rules.(XX)

Test on Units (10 & 11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ali likes writing ....

   a books   b blogs   c lessons   d stories

2. The blog is about .... habitats.

   a birds   b animals   c lizard   d lion

3. Animals need .... place to live

   a happy   b safe   c dangerous   d bad

4. We should try to .... animal habitats.

   a damage   b destroy   c protect   d see

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Migrating birds fly very........................ distances.

   a bad   b tall   c small   d long

2. Maher always .... in the school activities.

   a looks after   b takes part   c gives away   d decide

3. To " .... " means to give something away to help a person or organization.

   a volunteer   b support   c donate   d participate

4. Socialize means spending time with people in a/an .... way.

   a bad   b sad   c friendly   d tall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل:

charities - socialize - confidence - teenagers - advice

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to (1) .... and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you (2) .... It's amazing to see how (3) .... grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps (4) .... get the money they need.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is home to some of the most incredible historical sites in the world, like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. You can stand in the same place where pharaohs once walked and imagine the secrets of these ancient monuments. You can also explore the hieroglyphics on the temple walls. And don't forget to take a selfie with a mummy (don't worry, they're safely guarded in museums)!

But Egypt isn't just about the past; **it's** also a land of culture and friendly people. You can wander through markets, buy souvenirs, eat the traditional food; Koshari and drink fresh sugarcane juice. In the morning you can ride a camel in the Sahara Desert. In the evening you can take a boat ride down the Nile River or enjoy a delicious local meal under the stars. So, are you ready for an unforgettable adventure? Pack your bags, grab your hat, and get ready to discover the magic of Egypt!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. What famous places can you visit in Egypt? ....

a The Eiffel Tower
b The Great Wall of China
c The Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx
d Big Ben

2. In the morning you can .... in the Sahara Desert.

a go skiing
b surf the waves
c ride a camel
d visit the Eiffel Tower

3. Egypt's traditional food is ....

a sushi
b pizza
c koshari
d fish

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What can you do in the evening in Egypt?

....

5. What does the underlined word "**it's**" refer to?

....



Revision

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. bird - the - worm - The early - catches.

- -

2. birds - Many - to - migrate - and - from - Egypt.

- -

3. doing - We - are - project - a wildlife - school.

- -

Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. You .... (mustn't) respect nature.

2. She uses a pen to .... (writes) the homework.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the older brother was jealous

- -

Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Helping the community

Guiding phrases

take part - volunteer

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



General Activities

Activity 1

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hani is in a .... school.
   a primary b preparatory c secondary d kindergarten
2. Hani's father is a ....
   a doctor b teacher c farmer d dentist
3. Hani's mother helps .... people.
   a sick b well c happy d sad
4. Hani's mother works in a big ....
   a school b hospital c station d museum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. A: .... is the book ? B: It's under the table.
   a What b Why c Who d Where
2. She was very good at .... up stories.
   a making b taking c baking d doing
3. .... are objects used for fighting or hunting animals.
   a Paper b Weapons c Pens d Masks
4. To .... someone means to be more successful than them in a game.
   a bite b beat c heat d meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

food - looking - daughter - rose - sick

There was a king called Midas. He loved three things more than anything else. His 1 .... Marigold, his 2 .... garden and gold. One night, he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange - 3 .... goat. It was very sick. So King Midas took it into his castle and gave it 4 ....



1 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Malak. My favorite toy is my brown teddy bear. I got it on my birthday. My parents gave it to me. It is soft and cuddly. I play with it every day. I love my teddy bear. I am so happy it is still new.

My brother Mahmoud likes sports. His favorite toy is a ball. It is red and white. It is big and round. His friend gave it to him as a gift. He was so happy when he got it. He likes to play with his ball.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Malak's favorite toy is a ....
   a teddy bear   b ball   c train set   d skateboard
2. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a a ball   b a friend   c Malak   d Mahmoud
3. Mahmoud likes ....
   a cars   b food   c sports   d video games

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Who gave Malak the teddy bear?

....

5. Summarize the first paragraph into one sentence.

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. used - small - iron - for - They - items. ....
2. practice - I - had - to - a lot! ....
3. habitats - We - protect - should - animal - try to. ....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He .... (doesn't) do his homework yesterday.
2. The book is next .... (of) the table.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

he was walking in his garden

....



3 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-tourism

Guiding phrases

historical places – accommodation

Activity 2

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. In Egypt, the seasons of the year are ----------.
   a four b five c two d three
2. The weather is usually warm in the ----------.
   a fall b spring c summer d winter
3. We usually wear ---------- clothes in the winter.
   a warm b light c white d short
4. The day is long but the night is short in ----------.
   a winter b spring c summer d fall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My favorite game to play with friends is ---------- and seek.
   a hide b bike c skip d site
2. I have to wear a helmet to protect my ----------
   a knee b leg c head d hand
3. To ---------- is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a long time.
   a wear b buy c sell d mummify
4. A ---------- is an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or an animal.
   a grain b pet c statue d book



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

figure - set - fun - toys - made

Yaseen spent the weekend at his grandmother's house. He found his old action ❶ .... in the box of old toys. He remembered how much ❷ .... it was when he played with his old action figures and ❸ .... up lots of games for them, while his brother Adam liked playing with his train ❹ .... and marbles.

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Lara. Tomorrow, we're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation in Hurghada! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips there.

Next month, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Tomorrow, Lara is going to ....

   a Alex b Giza c Aswan d Hurghada

2. They can see many different kinds of .... and coral reefs.

   a fish b boats c trees d stars

3. They will set off on a tour from the beach in small ....

   a boats b cars c planes d umbrellas

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the first paragraph in two sentences.

5. Why mustn't be too many trips there? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. watching - go on - People - vacations - can - wildlife. ....
2. riding - I - my - really - bike - enjoy. ....
3. so - Some - difficult - games - skipping - are. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
2. I enjoyed .... (play) marbles with my friends.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

they finished painting the posters and tidied up ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A story you enjoyed reading

Guiding questions

1- Which story did you enjoy?
2- Who are the characters in your story?

....
....
....

Activity 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ali was shopping with his .... at the market.
   a friends   b parents   c brothers   d sisters
2. Ali saw a stall that sold ....
   a toys   b wood   c lemonade   d oranges
3. Ali thought the toys were ....
   a old   b boring   c small   d amazing
4. Ali's .... liked the train and bought it.
   a mother   b brother   c father   d sister

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Maybe he is .... because I get the job and he didn't.
   a happy   b glad   c jealous   d excited



2. I've .... my favorite team all my life.
a supported b won c slept d grew

3. A .... is what you touch to make a machine work.
a sail b button c stall d trunk

4. There are some wooden toys on the toy ....
a action b rollerblade c stall d cuddly

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

Fundraising - confident - socialize - give back - confidence

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to (1) .... and meet new people. Volunteering gives you (2) .... It's an important skill. (3) .... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to (4) .... to the place where you live.

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Playing video games is enjoyable and all of the children like playing video games. Video games have their pros and **cons**. On the positive side Video games can improve the ability to solve problems, make new things and to be creative. **They** also make you feel excited to connect with your friends all the time.

On the other hand, playing video games too much can affect your health because you keep sitting most of the time. In addition , some games could include harmful or violent content.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**cons**" refers to ....
a good things b bad things c enjoyable things d exciting things

2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" means ....
a children b problems c video games d friends

3. Some video games could include .... or violent content.
a harmful b great c excellent d good

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the suitable title for this passage? ....

5. What are the pros of playing video games? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. yesterday - bought - Wael - marbles - some. ....

2. should - donate - We - to - money - charity. ....

3. pass - study - I - my exam - to. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brother was ------ (at all) good at football. He always beats me!
2. Ghada prefers ---------- (play) board games to skipping.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we shouldn't cut down trees --

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

to your friend Ayman to tell him about your favorite video game. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com and your friend's email address is ayman@gmail.com

Guiding questions

- What is it called?
- How do you play it?

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Activity 4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Rawan is a ---------- girl.
   a clever b stupid c famous d helpful
2. She always gets the full marks in the ---------- .
   a birthday b presents c exams d parties

3. Rawan was born in ....

a May b July c April d March

4. She has a special .... in April.

a party b exam c day d month

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. We must look .... rare animals and birds.

a with b at c in d after

2. We had a lot of .... at Nada's birthday party.

a fun b happy c park d feathers

3. Our neighbor .... many cameras in our street.

a installed b grew c stayed d killed

4. We use a .... on a beach clean-up.

a multi-grip b rocket c mobile d grabber

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

good - holidays - eco-tourism - habitat - rivers

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and 1 .... It is 2 .... for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good 3 .... people can come on wildlife watching 4 ....

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Tarek. When I was a kid, I loved my skateboard more than other toys. My friends and I **had a go** on my skateboard as fast as we could while we were at the park. My skateboard was cool, black with bright stickers, and I always wore a helmet and knee pads because falling hurt! I got my first small skateboard as a present from my brother, Yossef, for my birthday. Now I have a bigger one and don't use the old one, but I still really like it because it reminds me of fun times when I was younger.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Tarek's favorite toy is a ....

a teddy bear b ball c train set d skateboard

2. The underlined phrase "**had a go**" means to ....

a create b invent c try d buy

3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a/an ....

a knee pad b old skateboard c helmet d new skateboard

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the suitable title for the passage? ....
5. Who bought the old skateboard for Tarek? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. good - the community - give back - It's - to. ....
2. did - start - first - When - Hani - volunteering? ....
3. habitats - We - protect - should - animal - try to. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She gets high marks .... (so) she studies hard.
2. I .... (be) surprised if he comes early.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hamza's teacher put cameras in the forest ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Old people

Guiding phrases

help them a lot - respect the old

....
....
....

Activity 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sami is in primary ....

a three b two c six d four

2. The mother is a ....

a teacher b nurse c doctor d baker

3. Sami has ....
a one brother b two brothers c a sister d two sisters
4. The teachers at Sami's school are ....
a modern b friendly c tired d famous

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. We .... to help in the community.
a play b volunteer c study d go
2. Teachers should be .... to their students.
a kind b type c sort d cruel
3. Can you .... any plans for the next weekend?
a do b take c bake d make
4. The area contains many .... of migrating birds.
a species b metals c clubs d stars

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

teachers - participating - skills - teach - joined

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to (1) .... the younger boys football (2) .... Lots of them (3) .... in, so it was great to have many children (4) ....

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

For many years, people thought that the **cleverest** animals are chimpanzees. Now, there is a proof that dolphins may be cleverer than chimpanzees.

Dolphins live in the sea but, they are not fish. It is called mammals. It is in many ways so like humans. Dolphins have a simple language. They are able to talk to each other. It may be possible for a man to learn how to talk to dolphins. But this will not be easy because dolphins cannot hear the kind of sound man can make. If a man wants to talk to them, he will have to make a third language that both he and the dolphins can understand.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**cleverest**" is similar in meaning to ....
a fastest b shortest c biggest d smartest
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
a dolphins b humans c animals d chimpanzees
3. The dolphins are ....
a fish b humans c mammals d birds

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence ....
5. How can we understand dolphins? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - the - What - day - center? ....
2. Rasha - this - sang - song- quietly. ....
3. visit - the weekend - you - grandma - Did - on - your? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We mustn't .... (playing) with the matches. It is dangerous.
2. If they have a new car, they .... (go) to Alexandria every summer.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Who will fly with you on friday ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

kinds - Egypt

To your friend Ahmed to tell him about migrating birds. Your email address is adel@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com

New Message

To .... **Cc Bcc**

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Activity 6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Playing is .... for us in lots of different ways.

   a bad   b good   c funny   d terrible

2. When we play, we feel ....

ⓐ happy ⓑ bored ⓒ sad ⓓ lazy

3. We also learn about the .... and ourselves.

ⓐ school ⓑ city ⓒ world ⓓ town

4. We learn to solve problems and make ....

ⓐ cakes ⓑ friends ⓒ games ⓓ money

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The .... of this story was the park.

ⓐ narrator ⓑ setting ⓒ moral ⓓ character

2. Ayman .... a text message from his friend.

ⓐ grew ⓑ lived ⓒ got ⓓ came

3. Aswan and Luxor are full of many .... places.

ⓐ smart ⓑ possible ⓒ sensible ⓓ historical

4. Many birds .... to Africa for the winter.

ⓐ hatch ⓑ grow ⓒ migrate ⓓ drive

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

crocodiles - boats - turtles - desert - cameras

We're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small ❶ .... and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our ❷ ...., because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and ❸ ...., as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be ❹ .... !They are very dangerous.

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Elizbeth was born in England in 1821. She immigrated to New York city when she was ten. She decided to become a doctor. She wanted to join a medical school. She found a doctor who accepted her. She was poor so she gave music lessons to earn money.

In 1849, she finished school. She decided to travel to Paris to complete her study there. She wanted to be a surgeon, but a **serious** eye infection forced her to stop thinking about this idea. She came back to the USA, she found it difficult to start her own practice because she as a young woman. After three years, she and her sister, who was a doctor, managed to open a new hospital for women and children.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**serious**" is similar in meaning with ....

ⓐ interesting ⓑ bright ⓒ nice ⓓ dangerous

2. She finished school and she decided to travel to .... in 1849.
   a New York b Paris c England d the USA
3. When she managed to open a new .... with her sister.
   a school b shop c hotel d hospital

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the second paragraph in two sentences. ....
5. Why can't she complete her study in Paris? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. her - Jana - Did - have - rollerblades - a go - on? ....
2. doing - the same - like - people - things - Similar. ....
3. killed- ate - The - and - wolf - the sheep ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If Nada eats all this cake, she .... (feel) sick.
2. You .... (mustn't) eat fruit and vegetables every day.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

The tour is only on monday and Wednesday ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Iron in Ancient Egypt

meteorites - mined

....
....
....

Activity 7

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My little sister was sick last ....
   a year b month c week d Sunday
2. She didn't like being ....
   a indoors b free c outside d outdoors

3. The little sister went to the hospital ....
   a park b yard c garden d restaurant
4. The little sister enjoyed the .... of the flowers.
   a review b picture c photo d view

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. A .... is a strong piece of cloth that make a boat move.
   a seal b sail c sale d mail
2. Osman didn't receive my message, so I must .... it.
   a replay b resend c repaint d dislike
3. I will .... the film and we can all watch it later.
   a delete b protect c study d record
4. We use action .... to tell our characters to run or jump.
   a butcher b buttons c bottom d boots

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

play - toy - park - helmet - playing

My father bought me a skateboard when I was eight. It was my favorite ❶ .... when I was young. It was black with orange and yellow stickers. I enjoyed ❷ .... with my friends at the ❸ .... and trying to go as fast as we could. I have a bigger one now, and I don't use the old one anymore. I always wear my ❹ .... and knee pads while skateboarding.

Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The characters in Goha's stories are good at learning us the moral. When we read Goha's stories, we learn lessons in our life. For example, the story about the man who goes to the market with his son and the donkey in the countryside. The people disagreed about what happened. Finally, the man and his son carried the donkey. The moral of this story is that you can't make everyone happy. Goha was right to tell us about this fact through his story. The story was funny, too because it makes us laugh. So I like reading Goha's stories to learn many things in my life. There are also the setting, the narrator, the characters, the moral and the ending to make a good story.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Goha's stories teach us a ....
   a setting b ending c narrator d moral
2. Finally, the man and his son .... the donkey.
   a sold b carried c killed d threw
3. Goha's stories make us ....
   a happy b sad c right d bored

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What makes the story good? ....

5. Why do we like Goha's stories? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. draughts - We - play - when - laugh - we. ....
2. patiently - to arrive - Mr Ibrahim - waited - the train - for ....
3. there - when - is - rain - isn't - A drought - enough. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I went to the club yesterday .... (meet) my friend.
2. Dalia came first. She runs really .... (fastly).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

do you think Amira's mom played tennis before ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Yara to tell her about "Fareeda Hassan". Your email address is yara@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is yomna@yahoo.com.

Someone who started volunteering: "Fareeda Hassan"

Guiding phrases

- **was born in Alexandria**
- **study social sciences**

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Activity 8

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fareeda was born in .... in 1994.
   a Aswan b Tanta c Cairo d Alexandria
2. In 2006, she started .... school.
   a primary b secondary c preparatory d university
3. In 2010, she .... her first charity event.
   a raised b organized c participated d slept
4. Fareeda Hassan did a beach ....
   a clean up b cleaner c clean out d clear

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. .... a boat is one of my favorite water activities.
   a Cycling b Diving c Sailing d Eating
2. Don't count your .... before they hatch.
   a birds b donkeys c feathers d chickens
3. We decided to .... up local children's charity.
   a end b start c play d read
4. He always .... money to help people and organizations.
   a records b controls c joins d donates

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

movie - record - during - natural - film

We are doing a wildlife project at school. My teacher installed two (1) .... cameras in the forest. We can use them to (2) .... wildlife. He put them in a tree to film birds (3) .... the day. Then, we (4) .... how many birds we can see, and what they're doing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Time is very important, so if we have free time, we should spend it in a useful way. Some people like to practice sports to keep fit and strong, others prefer reading and writing to live in their own way. Reading is the most important and

famous hobby that people can enjoy a lot. A book is a good friend that you can have with you where you go. It provides us with different information. That's why we should encourage our pupils to **take part in** free reading competitions. These competitions spread the love of reading between students.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The verb "**take part in**" in the text means ....
   a run away   b support   c participate   d encourage
2. .... can spread the love of reading between students.
   a Watching TV   b Practising sports
   c Running   d Free reading competitions
3. Practicing sports keep me .... and strong.
   a fat   b fit   c bad   d sad

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why do people prefer reading and writing? ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. often - flocks - Can - large - of - see - we - birds? ....
2. count - before - Don t - they - hatch - your chickens. ....
3. polite - your - Be - neighbors - to. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If she is smart, she .... (answer) the question.
2. We go to the station .... (to caught) the bus.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what is the favorite game in our class ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Guiding words

desert - protect

....
....
....

Activity 9

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The .... are the main goal for all charities.
   a old b disabled c poor d rich
2. Charities help our ....
   a plant b plane c plan d planet
3. We can donate .... to local charities.
   a cars b clothes c films d sports
4. They help with ....
   a education b culture c nature d All are OK

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Mahmoud is very .... He tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a famous b scary c careful d unkind
2. The .... is very fast but it can't fly.
   a swift b ostrich c flamingo d eagle
3. We .... to help in the community service project every year.
   a protect b volunteer c study d sleep
4. Teachers should be .... to their students.
   a kind b type c sort d cruel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

sharks - allowed - wildlife - ride - sea

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe (1) .... There is lots of other (2) .... too, and it is a great place for bird watching. The National Park is protected, but people are (3) .... to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and (4) .... boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our health is important. Doctors can give us medicine to help us when we are ill. Here are some ideas to protect you from illness. You should have a healthy diet. It is important to get enough sleep. It is important to brush your teeth every day to keep them strong and healthy. You should look after your eyes and ears. It is a good idea to have an eye test every year. You shouldn't listen to too loud music. Exercise is good for your heart and brain.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. You should have a healthy ....
   a diet b date c draft d doubt
2. Listening to too loud music is .... for you.
   a good b healthy c unhealthy d right
3. Doctors give us .... when we are ill.
   a medicine b apples c advice d oranges

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is exercise good for?

....

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. and - coral reefs - can - brightly colored - see - You - fish.

....

2. birds - How - know - go - where - birds - do - to?

....

3. make - wanted to - They - animals' - better - habitats.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She speaks in a .... (love) way.
2. My mom will buy lemons .... (make) lemonade.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why does reem help in the class

....

Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Hala to tell her about fundraising and donations:
Your name is Aya and your email address is aya@gmail.com and your friend's email is hala@hotmal

New Message
To .... Cc Bcc
From ....
Subject ....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Activity 40

Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d: استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hisham's father is a ....
   a) farmer b) fisherman c) scientist d) storyteller
2. Hisham's father sold the fish at the ....
   a) sea b) beach c) market d) shop
3. There was a message inside the ....
   a) boat b) fish c) bottle d) net
4. The man who wrote the message was from ....
   a) America b) Italy c) the USA d) Egypt

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cars and factories can .... lots of pollution.
   a) cause b) protect c) have d) kill
2. These socks are made of recycled plastic so it is ....
   a) eco-friendly b) bad c) ugly d) successful
3. The moral is the .... you learn from the story.
   a) time b) place c) lesson d) person
4. Goha is .... as Jha in Morocco.
   a) known b) done c) found d) carried



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

jumping - games - hiding - playing - seek

Rania and her friend Sarah started a school project about games and toys. They talked about their favorite ❶ .... when they were younger. Their favorite games were hide and ❷ ...., hopscotch, skipping, and marbles. Rania liked hide and seek because she was good at ❸ ...., while Sarah enjoyed skipping because she was good at ❹ .... for a long time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I read a story about the lion that ran away from the zoo last week. I was scared. The lion opened the cage and ran when the zookeeper put the food. I imagined when I went outside, I might meet it. So I couldn't go outside my house. I stayed at home for a week. I didn't go to my school or meet my friends. Suddenly at night I **woke up** to go to the bathroom. When I came back to my bedroom, I saw the lion sleeping in my bed. I shouted and cried a lot. My brother Nabil wanted some fun, so he wore the mask of a lion to scare me. I was angry with him because he always annoyed me.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. I stayed at home for .... days.
   - a six
   - b ten
   - c five
   - d seven
2. The underlined word "**woke up**" means ....
   - a get up
   - b climb up
   - c pick up
   - d walk up
3. The lion that slept in the bed was ....
   - a real
   - b right
   - c false
   - d angry

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What's the main idea of the passage? ....
5. Why did Nabil wear the mask? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً

1. learn - more - We - excited - to - are.

....

2. found - rocks - metal - They - in.

....

3. story - do - Which - like - to read - you?

....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The Ancient Egyptians ---------- (trading) with other countries.
2. Ayman was driving ---------- (which) it rained.

Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

you can t make everyone happy . ----------

Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Gold in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words

precious - Tutankhamun's mask

Activity (11)

Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We were walking in the forest yesterday ----------.
   a evening b afternoon c morning d night
2. It was a lovely day and the ---------- was shining.
   a sky b moon c sun d star
3. We were ---------- when we saw some wolves.
   a scared b angry c happy d excited
4. There were some ---------- playing on trees.
   a wolves b monkeys c birds d cats

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Dad was ---------- a newspaper when Hoda arrived.
   a riding b reading c playing d doing

2. This story took .... in the USA in 1970.

a part b place c pear d palace

3. If you tell ... . stories, no one will believe you.

a unhappy b untrue c untidy d unkind

4. We like surfing on the ....

a farm b moon c sea d tree

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

happens - world - stories - details - differences

Goha was a great narrator. I love his 1 .... He always gives us the 2 .... about the characters, the setting, and everything that 3 .... , Goha is famous all over the 4 .... , but he's known by different names.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mr Ramdan and his family decided to visit his brother Mr Fawzy in Cairo. He took his wife, Mrs Nawal, his two daughters Mona and Salma and his young son Yasseen to the train station. They bought the tickets and waited for the train. When the train arrived at 10 p.m, they got into it. Mona sat next to Salma and Yasseen sat next to his mother. Mr Ramdan sat behind them. A few minutes later, a beautiful woman sat next to <u>**him**</u>. They smiled to each other without talking any word.

All people on the train were sleeping because it was late at night and the journey to Cairo was long. When the train arrived at Cairo Station early in the morning, My Ramdan didn't find the lady next to him and didn't find his mobile phone either.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**him**" refers to ....

a Mr Ramadan b Yasseen c Mr Fawzy d A passenger

2. They arrived at Cairo Station ....

a at night b in the morning

c in the afternoon d in the evening

3. Mrs Nawal is Mr Ramadan's ....

a sister b daughter c aunt d wife

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why were people sleeping? ....

5. When did the train arrive before the journey? ....



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. was - playing - I - the sand - on. ....

2. do - you - disagree - Why - her - with? ....

3. a really - way - The - traveled - message - long. ....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If it rains, I will .... (staying) at home.

2. Dalia was swimming when she .... (finds) a glass bottle.

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we won't believe him again ....

Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Ayman to tell him about playing games:
Your email address is zaki@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is ayman@gmail.com

Guiding questions

1. **Is playing games good for us?**
2. **What do we learn from playing?**

New Message

To	....	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	....	
Subject	....	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like going to the beach in the ....
   a summer b winter c fall d spring
2. I enjoy ....on the beach alone.
   a sleeping b playing c walking d swimming
3. The restaurant serves all kinds of fresh ....
   a meat b fish c vegetables d fruit
4. The water inside the pool is ....
   a cold b hot c fresh d quiet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The last part of the story is called the ....
   a narrator b ending c setting d the moral
2. What did Tom .... when he read the man's reply?
   a feel b travel c replay d grew
3. In Tutankhamun's ...., there's a snake on the top of his head.
   a ball b mask c mobile d camera
4. It's difficult to find this kind of metal, it's ....
   a interesting b common c cheap d rare

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

threw - email - message - showed - reply

When I was surfing last week, I saw a little box on the water. I stopped surfing and picked up this box. I opened the box and found a (1) .... inside it. I (2) .... it to my father. He told me to send an (3) .... to the man who wrote this message. I put it in the box again and (4) .... it into the sea. I hope the man will find the box again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Reading is very important in our life. We should read different kinds of books. We learn new things from reading. I like reading Goha's stories. I can learn the moral from reading **them**. They are funny and clever. Goha was also a great narrator. He is known by different names all over the world. But his stories have some differences in every country. They have the moral that Goha wants to teach us.

General Activities

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Goha was a great ....
   a) traveller   b) narrator   c) teacher   d) swimmer
2. Goha is known by different .... all over the world.
   a) names   b) books   c) clothes   d) jokes
3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to Goha's ....
   a) names   b) stories   c) morals   d) countries

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Are Goha's stories the same in every country? ....
5. How is reading very important? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. found - Granddad - glass - the - bottle. ....
2. whale - west - A - went - white. ....
3. afternoon - I - watching - a match - was - yesterday. ....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The wolf came and .... (eats) the sheep.
2. She was .... (do) her homework when her mother called her.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

can you resend this message ....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب معرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

doll's house - train set

To your cousin Mona to tell her about your favorite toy. You name is Doaa and your email address is dodo@yahoo.com and your cousin's email address is mona89@gmail.com

New Message

To ....   **Cc** **Bcc**

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....



Activity 13

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. .... is a famous metal.
   a Gold b Iron c Bronze d Copper
2. The ancient Egyptians mined iron from the ....
   a metal b desert c ground d sea
3. The ancient Egyptians thought iron was more .... than gold.
   a precious b expensive c beautiful d difficult
4. They called iron the metal of ....
   a sky b sun c heaven d ground

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids with ....
   a wood b granite c gold d papyrus
2. A .... is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
   a stone b rock c weapon d jewelry
3. The main .... in this story is the little mouse.
   a setting b moral c ending d character
4. It's fun to .... stories.
   a tell b annoy c whisper d walk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

durable - pots - guide - artifacts - forever

We like going to the Pyramids to see how our ancient Egyptians were good builders. They used materials that last. 1 .... For example, they used granite which was very hard and 2 .... stone. They also used clay which came from the River Nile to make 3 .... They made 4 .... and covered them with gold.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus was a special plant in the Ancient Egypt. Farmers grew papyrus near the River Nile because it needed a lot of water to grow. Papyrus was important for people at this time. They used it to make paper. They wrote on papyrus. When we go to the museum, we can find many examples of writing on papyrus. They also made baskets from papyrus to put their things inside them.

General Activities

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a Making paper b Papyrus c Museums d Plants
2. The Ancient Egyptians made .... from papyrus.
   a pots b jewelry c baskets d artifacts
3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a paper b water c papyrus d baskets

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did farmers grow papyrus near the Nile? ....
5. Where can you find examples of writing on papyrus? ....

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sending - Do - messages - you - like? ....
2. ending - your - What's - of - the - story? ....
3. materials - What - the Ancient - did - use - Egyptians? ....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ....(Are) you sleeping when your father arrived?
2. There ....(are) cats in the Ancient Egyptians' houses.

Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i like walking in the fresh air ....

Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Omar to tell him about the story you read yesterday. Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef13@hotmail.com. and your friend's email address is omar17@gmail.com.

Guiding words

The story you read yesterday

the setting - the moral

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....

Al-Azhar Activity 14

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

charity - clothes - citizens - donate - planting

Ali : I want to help our community.
Mona : How about ❶ ____________ trees?
Ali : Nice. We can also ❷ ____________ old things.
Mona : We can donate ❸ ____________ and money.
Ali : I know a ❹ ____________ that helps the poor.
Mona : So we are good ❺ ____________

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	well	slowly	happily	sad	-----
2	sleep	read	gold	study	-----
3	spring	summer	teacher	fall	-----
4	how	were	when	what	-----
5	sheep	wolf	joke	donkey	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's good to ____________ to the place where you live.
   a give out   b give away   c give back   d give in
2. Children who ____________ in a group activity usually have lots of fun!
   a take   b study   c participate   d look after
3. We ____________ listen to our parents and teachers.
   a mustn't   b are   c have   d must
4. We should ____________ money to charity.
   a donate   b volunteer   c look out   d steal
5. When my mom is away, I have to ____________ my little sister.
   a run away   b look for   c look after   d look out
6. A: Why are you buying eggs? B: ____________ a sandwich.
   a To made   b To making   c Make   d To make

7. Gamal and Samir .... walking their dog yesterday afternoon.
 a is b was c were d are

8. Are you .... to help him understand his lessons?
 a famous b funny c successful d similar

9. I am ill, ... I will go to school tomorrow.
 a and b because c so d but

10. She learned the rules ....
 a bad b fast c slow d good

Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Last April, my parents took me to Alexandria. We went there in my father's car. We went to lots of restaurants and had a lot of fun. We also went to the Alexandria Library, which was really cool. I learned a lot about the history of Alexandria there. We swam in the sea, but the water was cold. We had a really happy time in Alexandria, and I can't wait to go back some day.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The family went to Alexandria in the ....
 a summer b winter c spring d fall
2. They swam in the ....
 a pool b sea c lake d beach
3. They went to lots of ....
 a cafés b hospitals c parks d restaurants

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How did the family travel to Alexandria?

....

5. What did they learn there?

....

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. ate - meal - his - Adam - quickly.

....

2. Giza - to - traveled - We - the Pyramids - to see.

....

3. clever - and - These - funny - are - stories.

....

4. our community - We - help - should.

....

5. pictures - a lot of - painted - We.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

"Last weekend"

Guiding words

enjoyed - friends - video games - free time - my home

Weather Activity 15

1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

happened - beach - doing - when - scared

Adel : Where were you yesterday morning?

Samy : I was on the ❶ ------------------ near my house.

Adel : What were you ❷ ------------------?

Samy : I was walking ❸ ------------------ it rained.

Adel : What ❹ ------------------ next?

Samy : I was a bit ❺ ------------------ and ran home.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	whale	where	when	what	------
2	silver	gold	iron	rose	------
3	whisper	wear	went	walk	------
4	Sunday	holiday	Saturday	Monday	------
5	angry	bored	clever	replay	------

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Many years .... and Omar grew up.
   a) passed b) found c) walked d) worked
2. The .... is someone who looks after the sheep.
   a) narrator b) shepherd c) villager d) character
3. We were .... to music when the man shouted.
   a) listens b) listening c) listened d) listen
4. I have a .... to my message.
   a) reply b) joke c) boat d) newspaper
5. I was going home from school when I .... my friend.
   a) meeting b) meet c) met d) meets
6. The villagers came to .... the sheep.
   a) whisper b) walk c) wave d) save
7. We bought tickets............the match at the stadium.
   a) watch b) watching c) to watch d) to watched
8. Peter was sorry when the wolf .... the sheep.
   a) ate b) said c) wasted d) scored
9. This furniture is made of wood from .... sources.
   a) interested b) sustainable c) tired d) bad
10. If you .... a minute, I will ask my parents.
   a) are waiting b) waiting c) wait d) waits

Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Reem is a pupil in primary six. Her mother has a bookshop. The shop is near their house. Sometimes, Reem goes to the shop to help her mother. There are a lot of different books at the shop. Reem likes stories best. The shop is usually quiet, but it gets very busy on Fridays. A lot of people go to the shop on that day to buy books and they take their children with them. Reem sits with the children and reads them some stories. The children enjoy the stories a lot and they usually buy them. The children spend a lovely time at the bookshop.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of books does Reem like best?

....

2. Who does Reem help at the bookshop?

....



3. What does Reem do when she sits in the shop?

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. The shop was busy on ....
   a) Sundays b) Mondays c) Fridays d) Wednesdays
5. The shop is .... Reem's house.
   a) behind b) next to c) near d) under

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. will - If - pass - I - the exams - study, - I.

---

2. many - to visit - There - historical - are - places.

---

3. she - win - What - award - did?

---

4. to go - do - know - How - where - the birds?

---

5. followed - I - my - the forest - friend - in.

---

6 Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Your favorite story

Guiding words

shepherd - bored - villagers - wolf - sorry



Al-Azhar Activity [illegible]



1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

important - pollution - sure - eco-tourism - sustainable

Mahmoud : Hello, what do you think of ❶ ....?

Badr : I think it is ❷ .... for Egypt.

Mahmoud : Is it more ❸ .... than traditional tourism?

Badr : Yes, it is.

Mahmoud : I think tourists mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of ❹ ....

Badr : Yes, ❺ ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct one
اقرأ و ضع دائره حول الكلمة المختلفة

when	were	why	which	......
Monday	Sunday	Tuesday	birthday	......
school	park	hospital	nurse	......
swift	park	hospital	nurse	......
sea	bike	train	plane	......

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We should all try to protect animal ....

   a vacations b rivers c distances d habitats

2. We .... to help in the community service project every year.

   a donate b volunteer c run away d take place

3. Wildlife watching is .... for people who respect nature.

   a ideal b sustainable c smart d careful

4. If he .... free time, he will visit Luxor and Aswan.

   a has b is c having d have



5. There are over 450 .... of birds in Egypt.

a beaks b feathers c schools d species

6. She got the best grades .... she studied hard.

a so b because c but d and

7. Ali slept .... yesterday.

a quite b quietly c quiet d quit

8. I heard two people shouting .... in the street.

a loudly b angry c loud d anger

9. Mr Hany was washing his car .... he met his neighbor, Adel.

a what b where c when d who

10. What was happening .... evening?

a tomorrow b every c yesterday d next

Read the following then answer the question:

أقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

An artist went to the country for a holiday, and stayed with a farmer. Every day he went out with his paints and his brushes and painted from morning to evening, and then when it got dark, he went back to the farm and had a good dinner before going to bed. At the end of his holiday, he wanted to pay the farmer, but the farmer said: "No, I don't want money, but give me one of your pictures. What is money? In a week it will all be finished, but your painting will still be here". The artist was very pleased and thanked the farmer for saying these kind things about the paintings.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the artist spend his holiday? ....
2. What did he do during his holiday? ....
3. Why was the farmer pleased at the end? ....

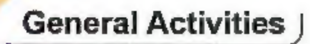
B: Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to the ....

a farmer b artist c picture d money

5. Every day the artist went out with his ....

a paints b brushes c farmer d paints and brushes



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. forgot - Granddad - message - about - the.

----

2. ending - What's - of - the story - the?

----

3. You - be - time - home - on - must.

----

4. the - What's - in - the message - bottle?

----

5. to - migrate - birds - Many - Egypt - water.

----

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"Bird migration"

Guiding words

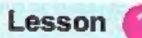
migrate - hotter - leave - fly - food

Listening Material





Unit 7



Lesson 1

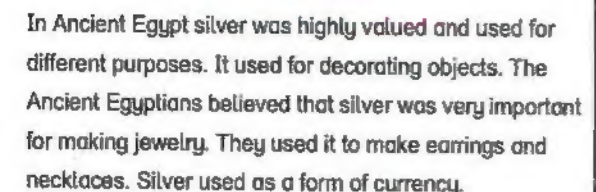
- Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

My name is Tamer. I went on a trip to the Egyptian Museum yesterday. The museum has a lot of artifacts. I met Mr Tarek. Mr Tarek is a guide. The objects in the museum were amazing. I visited Tutankhamun's tomb. The artifacts were made of granite. The Ancient Egyptians were so clever.

Lesson 2

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. Cats eat mice. They are clean and calm. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. I love cats very much.

Lesson 4



In Ancient Egypt silver was highly valued and used for different purposes. It used for decorating objects. The Ancient Egyptians believed that silver was very important for making jewelry. They used it to make earrings and necklaces. Silver used as a form of currency.

Activity Unit 7

My name is Shehab. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are great. I went with my family. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids. They built them from granite. It's a hard stone. I saw the Sphinx. It's near the Pyramids. I visited the Khufu solar ship. It's an artifact from Ancient Egypt.

Unit 8

Lesson 2

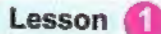
When I was young, my favorite toy was my black skateboard with orange and yellow stickers. Playing at the park with friends was good fun, but falling off hurt. I got my first skateboard when I was eight, but now I have a bigger one and don't use it.

Lesson 4 

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

Activity Unit 8 

Nour liked sports. She really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.



Unit 9 

Lesson 1

My name is Ahmed. Every summer my family goes to the countryside to visit my grandparents. My sister feeds the chickens and goats. I ride on the donkey. My mother bakes bread. My father helps my grandparents on the farm.

Lesson 2 

Yesterday, I went to the library to read a story. I found an exciting story about a boy and his grandfather. The boy and his grandfather were sitting on the beach. They had a great idea to write a message in a bottle and threw it in the sea. They washed the glass bottle and the boy wrote the message on a piece of paper and put it in the bottle. Then, the boy threw it. After many years, the grandfather sent the reply to the boy.

Lesson 4 

We enjoy reading stories or watching films to know the important events. We learn about the characters and they teach us the moral. This moral helps us in our life. Good stories should have endings to tell us what happened to the characters and how they felt at the end of the story.

Activity Unit 9

On summer holidays, I like going to my grandpa's farm with my family. He has a big house. We play, sing and watch TV. When we are bored, my grandpa always tells us stories. He has a lot of stories in his bedroom. We sit around him and he reads the story and we listen to him carefully. Then, he asks us some questions about the characters, the events, the setting and the moral. We learn many things from these stories. I always remember my grandpa's stories.

Review 3 

Activity on Units 7, 8 & 9 

Many of Ancient Egyptians kept cats at their homes as pets. When we go to the museum, we can see animal statues, especially cats. They had cats because cats kept their houses free of mice and rats. The Ancient Egyptians believed in the afterlife, so they mummified cats and put them in tombs, as it had a great place.

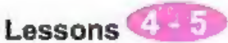
Unit 10 

Lesson 1 

My friend Ahmed has a farm in Aswan. It is a big farm. He grows many things there like mangoes, tomatoes and potatoes. He lives on a farm. He has many different types of animals.

Lesson 2 

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important.



Lessons 4 - 5

Next Friday, my parents are going to Paris. It is the first time to go there. They feel excited very much. They want to see the Eiffel Tower. They also want to go to the zoo to see the elephants there. The elephant is their favorite animal. They will stay one week there.

Activity Unit 10 

Akram lives with his small family in Cairo. He lives in a big apartment. He has two sisters. He spends a lot of time with them. They like going shopping in the near shopping mall. He wants to buy some food and a new phone. He doesn't like going to the park because the children there are noisy. On Friday, he visits his uncle on his farm in the village. There, he sees many animals. He likes the horses and the cows.

Unit 11 

Lesson 1 

I feel happy when I help my neighbor because she is old and she lives alone. After her husband's death, she wanted me to spend time with her. I help her plant and water the flowers in her garden. We sometimes watch TV together. She is very kind to me.

Lesson 3 

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and take to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers in confidene when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

Activity Unit 11 

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use a multi-grip to take off the tops. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use.

Review 4 

Activity on Units 10 & 11 

I'm Ali. I like writing blogs. I'm writing a new blog today. The blog is about animals habitats. We should try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe place to live, find food, and look after their babies. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt. Such as the desert, sea, mountain, rivers.

General Activities 

Activity 1 

My name is Hani and I am a student in a primary school. My father works as a teacher. He always helps his students. His students like him very much. He works in a primary school. My mother is a doctor. She works in a big hospital. She helps sick people to get better. I'm so proud of my parents.

Activity (2)

There are four seasons in a year in Egypt. They are spring, summer, fall and winter. In the spring, the weather is usually warm. Sometimes it is cold, but not very cold. After spring, it is summer. In summer the day is long but the night is short. I often go on vacation in summer. Fall is a nice season. The weather is often cool. In winter, it is usually very cold. The days are short but the nights are long. We usually wear warm clothes in the winter

Activity (3)

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's father came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

Activity (4)

I am Rawan. I am a clever girl. I always get the full marks in my exams. My favorite month is April because it is my birthday and we have a special party. I always invite my friends to my birthday as I love them very much. They love me, too. They always give me presents on that day.

Activity (5)

My name is Sami. I am in primary six. My father is a doctor. He loves his job. He is successful and well-known. My mother is a teacher in a near school. I am a student in this school. We love our school so much as the teachers are friendly there. I have another brother called Eyad. He is seven years old.

Activity (6)

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

Activity (7)

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. When we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being indoors. She liked open areas. We decided to take her to the hospital garden. She enjoyed the view of the flowers and plants.

Activity (8)

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. She started prep school in 2006 - Here she participated in her first Volunteer event. She and a team of Volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, She organized her first Charity event.

Activity (9)

There are charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture and nature. The poor are the main goal for all charities. Also the disabled People need our help. We can donate money, clothes and old things to local charities.

Activity (10)

Hisham's father is a fisherman. They lived by the sea in Alexandria. He went with his father to catch fish to sell in the market. One day, Hisham put the net in the sea, but he found a bottle in the net. There was a message inside the bottle. He read the message and wrote another message to a man in Italy. After many years, Hisham grew up and suddenly, he found another bottle. The man replied to his message and invited to him to visit Italy.

Activity (11)

My friend and I were walking in the forest yesterday morning. It was a lovely day and the sun was shining. We were near the trees and hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when we saw some wolves shouting. We were scared. Then, there were some monkeys playing on trees. I threw some bananas to them. Then, we returned home and told our story to my family.

Activity (12)

I like going to the beach in winter. That's strange, but I like swimming in quiet and beautiful sea. I enjoy walking on the beach alone. When it rains, I stay in my room in the hotel near the beach. There's a big restaurant in the hotel. It serves delicious food and all kinds of fresh fish. There's also a swimming pool inside the hotel. When it's cold outside, we can swim in the pool because the water inside is hot.

Activity (13)

Iron is a famous metal. It was important in the Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians used iron more than 5,000 years. They used it in many things. They mined iron from the ground. They called it the metal of heaven. They thought iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.